

Essential Grammar in Use

A self-study reference and practice book for elementary students of English

Raymond Murphy



УДК 811.111'36 (075) ББК 81.2 Англ-4 M 96

Murphy, Raymond.

Essential grammar in use: a self-study reference and practice book for elementary students of English (with answers) / R. Murphy. - Tashkent: «ART M 96 FLEX» Publishing House, 2020. – 272 p.

УДК 811.111'36 (075) ББК 81.2 Англ-4

ISBN 978-5-7261-0243-6 ISBN 978-9943-301-89-4 © "Turkestan" Publishing House, 2011 © "ART FLEX" Publishing House, 2020

Essential Grammar in Use

A self-study reference and practice book for elementary students of English

WITH ANSWERS

Raymond Murphy

-1450-

for

5)

020



O'ZBEKISTON RESPUBLIKASI
OLIY VA O'RTA MAXSUS TA'LM VAZIRLIOT
TOSHKENT VILOYATI CHIRCHIQ
DAVLAT PEDAGOGIKA INSTITUTI
AXBOROT RESURS MARKAZI

Published by the Press Syndicate of the University of Cambridge The Pitt Building, Trumpington Street, Cambridge CB2 IRP 40 West 20th Street, New York, NY 10011 – 4211, USA 10 Stamford Road, Oakleigh, Melbourne 3166, Australia

© Cambridge University Press 1990

First published 1990 Ninth printing 1994

Printed in Great Britain at the University Press, Cambridge

British Library cataloguing in publication data

Murphy, Raymond, 1946 –
Essential grammar in use: a self-study reference and practice book for elementary students of English: with answers
1. English language. Grammar
1. Title
428.2

ISBN 0 521 35770 5 (with answers)
ISBN 0 521 35771 3 (without answers)

Copyright

The law allows a reader to make a single copy of part of a book for purposes of private study. It does not allow the copying of entire books or the making of multiple copies of extracts. Written permission for any such copying must always be obtained from the publisher in advance.

Contents

To the student (working without a teacher) viii
To the teacher ix
Thanks 1

Unit 1 Unit 2 Unit 3 Unit 4 Unit 5 Unit 6 Unit 7 Unit 8	am / is / are am / is / are (questions) I am doing (present continuous) Are you -ing? (present continuous questions) I do / work / like etc. (present simple) I don't (present simple negative) Do you? (present simple questions) I am doing (present continuous) and I do (present simple)
Unit 9 Unit 10 Unit 11 Unit 12 Unit 13	I watched / cleaned / went etc. (past simple) I didn't Did you? (past simple negative and questions was / were I was doing (past continuous) I was doing (past continuous) and I did (past simple)
Unit 14	have / has (got)
Unit 15 Unit 16 Unit 17 Unit 18 Unit 19	I have done (present perfect 1) Have you ever? (present perfect 2) How long have you? (present perfect 3) for since ago I have done (present perfect) and I did (past simple)
Unit 20	it is done / it was done (passive)
Unit 21 Unit 22 Unit 23 Unit 24	What are you doing tomorrow? (present for the future) I'm going to will / shall (1) will / shall (2)
Unit 25 Unit 26 Unit 27 Unit 28 Unit 29 Unit 30	can and could may and might must should have to t Would you like?
Unit 31 Unit 32 Unit 33	there is there are there was / were / has been / will be it

HOS BUILDING

```
go / going work / working play / playing etc.
be / have / do in present and past tenses
Regular and irregular verbs

Lam / Lon't etc.
 Unit 34
 Unit 35
 Unit 36
           I am / I don't etc.
 Unit 37
           Have you? / Are you? / Don't you? etc.
too / either so am I / neither do I etc.
Negatives: isn't / haven't / don't etc.
 Unit 38
 Unit 39
 Unit 40
            Questions (1): is it ...? have you ...? do they ...? etc.
            Questions (2): Who saw you? Who did you see?

Questions (3): Who is she talking to?
 Unit 41
 Unit 42
            Questions (3): Who is she talking to? What is it like?
 Unit 43
            What ...? Which ...? How ...?
 Unit 44
            How long does it take?
 Unit 45
            Can you tell me where ...? Do you know what ...? etc.
 Unit 46
            to ... (I want to do) and -ing (I enjoy doing)
I want you to .../ I told you to ...
He said that ... / He told me that...
  Unit 47
  Unit 48
  Unit 49
            I went to the shop to buy ...
  Unit 50
                          (Secure Point of the Inner Change of Sections )
  Unit 51
  Unit 52
            go
            I / me he / him they / them etc.
  Unit 53
  Unit 54
            my / his / their etc.
                                It's mine
            Whose is this?
  Unit 55
            I / me / my / mine
  Unit 56
            myself / yourself / himself etc.
  Unit 57
            -'s (Ann's camera / my brother's car etc.)
  Unit 58
            a / an flower / flowers (singular and plural)
  Unit 59
  Unit 60
            a car / some money (countable / uncountable 1)
  Unit 61
            a car / some money (countable / uncountable 2)
  Unit 62
            a / an and the
  Unit 63
            the
go home / go to work / go to the cinema
I like music I hate examinations
the (names of places)
  Unit 64
  Unit 65
  Unit 66
  Unit 67
            this / that / these / those one / ones
  Unit 68
  Unit 69
  Unit 70
             not + any no none
  Unit 71
            not + any no none
not + anybody / anyone / anything nobody / no-one / nothing
some- / any- / no- / + -body / -one / -thing / -where
  Unit 72
  Unit 73
             every everybody / everything etc.
  Unit 74
             all most some no/none any
Unit 75
             both either neither
  Unit 76
             a lot much many
  Unit 77
             (a) little (a) lew
  Unit 78
```

```
big / tired / beautiful etc. (adjectives)
Unit 79
         quickly / badly / suddenly etc. (adverbs)
Unit 80
Unit 81
                       expensive / more expensive
         old / older
Unit 82
         older than ... more expensive than ...
Unit 83
         not as ... as
                      the most expensive
Unit 84
         the oldest
Unit 85
         enough
Unit 86
         too
Unit 87
         Word order (1)
         Word order (2)
Unit 88
Unit 89
          still yet
                             Give it to mel

/ in April
nce for
Unit 90
         Give me that book!
Unit 91
                   on Monday
         at 10.30
         from ... to until since for
Unit 92
Unit 93
         before after during while
Unit 94
              at (places)
         in
Unit 95
         to
              in at (places)
Unit 96
                         behind etc. (prepositions)
               under
         on
Unit 97
         up over
                    through etc. (prepositions)
              by with / without about (prepositions)
Unit 98
         at
          afraid of
                    on holiday etc. (word + prepositions)
Unit 99
Unit 100
                     listen to ... etc. (verb + preposition)
          look at ...
                         run away etc. (phrasal verbs 1)
Unit 101
          go in
               fall off
                             put your shoes on (phrasal verbs 2)
Unit 102
          put on your shoes
                                          seer and the all magaziness of all
Unit 103
               but
                     or
                              because
          and
                         SO
Unit 104
          When ...
Unit 105
          If ...
Unit 106
          a person who ... a thing that / which ... (relative clauses 1)
          the people we met the hotel you stayed at (relative clauses 2)
Unit 107
                                   216
Appendix 1
             List of irregular verbs
             Irregular verbs in groups 217
Appendix 2
Appendix 3
             Short forms (he's / I'd / don't etc.) 218
              Spelling
                        220
Appendix 4
             Phrasal verbs (look out / take off etc.) 222
Appendix 5
             Phrasal verbs + object (ring up my friend / put out a fire etc.)
Appendix 6
Key
          224
Index
          254
```

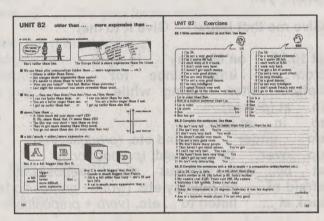
To the student (working without a teacher)

This is a grammar book for elementary students of English. There are 107 units in the book and each unit is about a different point of English grammar. There is a list of units at the beginning of the book (*Contents*).

Do not study all the units in order from beginning to end. It is better to choose the units that you *need* to do. For example, if you have a problem with the present perfect ('have done' / 'have been' etc.), use the Index (at the back of the book) to find the unit(s) you need to study (Units 15 - 19).

Each unit is two pages. The explanation is on the left-hand page and the exercises on the right.

Explanation



Exercises

Use the book in this way:

- 1 Look in the Contents and I or Index to find the unit(s) you need.
- 2 Study the left-hand page (explanation and information).
- 3 Do the exercises on the right-hand page (if you want to do them).
- 4 Use the Key to check your answers.
- 5 Study the left-hand page again if necessary.

Don't forget the six *Appendices* at the back of the book (pages 216-223). These will give you information about irregular verbs, short forms, spelling and phrasal verbs.

To the teacher

The most important features of this book are:

- It is a grammar book. It deals only with grammar and is therefore not intended to be a general course book.
- It is a book for elementary learners. It does not cover areas of grammar which are not normally taught at elementary level.
- It combines reference and exercises in one volume.
- It can be used either for self-study or as supplementary course material.

Organisation of the book

There are 107 units in the book, each one focusing on a particular area of grammar. The material is organised in grammatical categories, such as tenses, modal verbs, questions, pronouns, articles, adjectives and prepositions. Units are *not* ordered according to difficulty, and should therefore be selected and used in the order appropriate for the learner(s). The book should *not* be worked through from beginning to end. The units are listed in the *Contents* and there is a comprehensive *Index* at the end of the book.

Each unit has the same format consisting of two facing pages. The point is explained on the left-hand page and the corresponding exercises are on the right. There are six *Appendices* (pages 216 – 223) dealing with irregular verbs, short forms (contractions), spelling and phrasal verbs. It might be useful for teachers to draw students' attention to these.

Finally, there is a *Key* at the back of the book (pages 224 – 253) for students to check their answers. An edition without the *Key* is also available for teachers who might prefer their students to use this.

Level

The book is intended for elementary learners, i.e. learners with very little English, but I would not expect it to be used from the first day of a course for complete beginners. It is intended mainly for elementary students who are beyond the very earliest stages of a beginners' course. It could also be used by lower-intermediate students whose grammar is weaker than other aspects of their English or who have problems with particular areas of 'elementary' grammar.

The explanations are addressed to the elementary student and are therefore as simple and as short as possible. The vocabulary used in the examples and exercises has also been restricted so that the book can be used at this level.

Using the book

The book can be used by students working alone (see 'To the student,' page viii) or as supplementary course material. In either case the book can serve as an elementary grammar reference book.

When used as course material, the book can be used for immediate

consolidation or for later revision or remedial work. It might be used by the whole class or by individual students needing extra help.

In some cases it may be desirable to use the left-hand pages (explanation) in class, but it should be noted that these have been written more for private study and reference. In most cases, it is probably better for the teacher to present the grammar point in his / her preferred way with the exercises being done for homework. The left-hand page is then available for later reference by the student.

A teacher might prefer to keep the book for revision and remedial work. In this case, individual students or groups of students can be directed to the appropriate units for self-study.

the second second and the second seco

and artiful province your Acad are all the bearday mortions at a subject.

Thanks

would like to thank all the students and teachers at the schools and institutes named below who used the pilot edition of this book. Their comments and suggestions were very helpful. I would also like to express my thanks to lison Baxter and Angela Wilde of Cambridge University Press for all their help and advice.

Pilot centres:

The British Institute, Florence, Italy; The British School, Bologna, Italy; FAO, Rome, Itajy; International House, Arezzo, Italy; International House, La Spezia, Italy; ITC Maggiolini, Parabiago, Italy; IHLS, Budapest, Hungary; International House, Budapest, Hungary; International Language Institute, Cairo, Egypt; LS Kieliopisto, Tampere, Finland; Klubschule Migros, Berne, Switzerland; Klubschule Migros, Lichtensteig, Switzerland; Ecole d'Ingeneurs, Geneva, Switzerland; Capital Institute, Ruwi, Oman; British Institute, Valencia, Spain; International House, Madrid, Spain; International House, Barcelona, Spain; International House, Coimbra, Portugal; Instituto de diomas, Lima, Peru; AMES, Hobart, Tasmania; CUCES-Universites, Nancy, France; INFOP, Longvic, France; The British Council Cambridge English School, Tokyo, Japan; Cambridge English School, Ikebukuro, Japan; Cambridge English School, Tokyo, Japan; Stanton School of English, Tokyo, Japan; Katoh Gakuen Gyoshu High School, Japan; The Studio School of English, Cambridge; The Cambridge Centre for Languages, Sawston; University of Glasgow EFL Unit; The Bell School of Languages, Cambridge; The Swan School of English, Oxford; Institute for Applied Language Studies, University of Edinburgh.

Acknowledgements

Drawings by Chris Evans, Leslie Marshall, Ed McHenry, David McKee,
Annie McManus and Shaun Williams.
Design and art direction by Peter Ducker MSTD

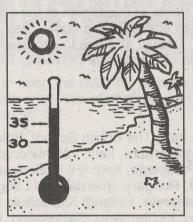
representation the part Prote state administration

with a section of the contract of

UNIT 1 am/is/are



She's a doctor. She isn't a nurse.



It's hot. It isn't cold.



They're rich. They aren't poor.

positive

l am	(l'm)
he she it is	(he's) (she's) (it's)
we you hare they	(we 're) (you 're) (they 're)

negative

l am no	ot (I'm not)	gri ja filozofi e ja ja
he she it is n	(he's not or or (she's not or (it's not or	he isn't) she isn't) it isn't)
we you are not they	(we're not or ot (you're not or (they're not or	you aren't)

- Can you close the window, please? I'm cold.
- I'm 32 years old. My sister is 29.
- My brother is a policeman. He's very tall.John is afraid of dogs.
- It's 10 o'clock. You're late again.
- Ann and I are very good friends.
- My shoes are very dirty. I must clean them.
- I'm tired but I'm not hungry.
- Tom isn't interested in politics.
- Jane **isn't** at home at the moment. She's at work.
- Those people aren't English. They're Australian.
- there's = there is here's = here is: that's = that is
 - Thank you. That's very kind of you.
 - Look! **There's** George.
- ► Unit 2 am / is / are (questions)



UNIT 1 Exercises

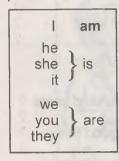
1.1 Write the short form (she's	s/we aren't etc.)			
1 he is he's 2 they are	3 she is not 4 it is		6 you are not	
Write the full form (she is/we	are not etc.).		15100	
7 we aren't we are not 8 I'm	9 you're 10 they aren't		11 it isn't	
1.2 Rut in am, is or are.			A STATE OF THE STA	
1 The weatheris very re 2 Inot tired. 3 This case	avy. y heavy. ol. en the window, e am/is/are eac shoes are very My g) assive) ars old) ery old)	old. 9 My brother a players. 10 Ann at 11 I architect. h time. dirty	at home but her child t school. student. My sister	nnis dren an
1.4 Write positive or negative	sentences. Use	am/am not/is/is	sn't/are/aren't.	
1 (Paris / the capital of France 2 (I / interested in football) 3 (I / hungry) I	try)	sted in football		. today

UNIT 2

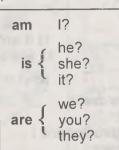
am / is / are (questions)

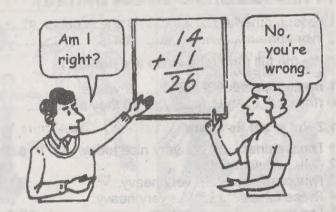
▶ Unit 1 am / is / are

positive



question





- 'Is your mother at home?' 'No, she's out.'
- 'Is it cold in your room?' 'Yes, a little.'- Those shoes are nice. Are they new?
- Are books expensive in your country?
- 'How old is Joe?' 'He's 24.'
- 'What colour is your car?' 'It's blue.'
- 'Where are you from?' 'Canada.'
- 'How much are these postcards?' 'They're 40 pence each.'

where's = where is: what's = what is who's = who is how's = how is

- What's the time? Who's that man?
- Where's Jill?
- How's your father?

short answers

No, I'm not. not. or No, { she } isn't. not. or No, { you they } aren't. you're

- 'Are you tired?' 'Yes, lam.'- 'Are you hungry?' 'No, I'm not but I'm thirsty.'
- 'Is he English?' 'Yes, he is.'
- 'Is Ann at work today?' 'No, she isn't.'
- 'Is this seat free?' Yes, it is.'
- 'Are these your shoes?' 'Yes, they are.'
- 'Am I late?' No, you aren't.'



UNIT 2 Exercises

2.1 Write questions from the	se words. Use am / is / are .	
2 (your parents at home?) . 3 (this hotel expensive?) . 4 (you interested in art?) . 5 (the shops open today?) .	s your mother at home	at home ?
2.2 Write questions with Wha	at/Who/How/Where/Why? Use	e am / is / are.
1 (what colour your car?) 2 (where my key?) 3 (where my socks?) 4 (how old your father?) 5 (what colour his eyes?) 6 (why John angry with me?) 7 (how much these shoes?) 8 (who your favourite actor?) 9 (why you always late?)	How	? ? ? ? ? ? ? ? ? ? ? ? ? ? ? ? ? ? ?
2.3 Ask the questions. (Read	the answers to the questions	first.)
You	The party of the control of the cont	PAUL
(British?) (where / from?) (how old?) (a student?) (your wife a teacher?) (where / from?) (her name?)	s your name ? e you married or single ? ? ? ? ? ? ? ? ? ? ?	Paul. I'm married. No, I'm not. From Australia. I'm 25. No, I'm a teacher. No, she's a lawyer. She's Italian. Anna. She's 25 too.
2.4 Write positive or negative	e short answers (Yes, I am / No, I	ne Isn't etc.).
1 Are you married? No. I'm 2 Are you tall? Yes, I o 3 Is it cold today? 4 Are you a teacher? 5 Are you tired?	not. 6 Is it dark now 7 Are your har 8 Are Jou hun 9 Is your father	w? nds cold? gry? er tall?



UNIT 3 1 am doing (present continuous)



She's eating.
She isn't reading.



It's raining.
The sun isn't shining.



bu

2345

7

3.

They're running.
They aren't walking.

■ The present continuous tense is: am / is / are -ing (doing / eating / raining / running / writing etc.)

l am (not)	-ing	I'm working.
he she is (not)	-ing	Tom is writ ing a letter. She isn't eat ing . The telephone is ring <i>ing</i> .
we you } are (not) they	-ing	We're having dinner. You're not listening to me. The children are doing their homework.

► Unit 1 for the short forms 'm/'s/'re/isn't/aren't

am / is / are -ing = something

is happening now:

I'm working she's wearing a hat they're playing football I'm not watching television

past NOW future

- Please be quiet. I'm working. (= I'm working now)

- Look! Joy is wearing her new hat. (= she's wearing it now)
- Don't go out now. It's raining.
- 'Where are the children?' 'They're playing in the garden.'
- (on the telephone) We're having dinner now. Can you phone later?
- You can turn the television off. I'm not watching it.

Spelling ► Appendix 4 (4.3 and 4.4):

- ► Unit 4 Are you -ing? (present continuous questions)
- ▶ Unit 8 I em doing (present contlnuous) and I do (present simple)
- ▶ Unit 21 What are you doing tomorrow? (present for the future)

UNIT 3 Exercises

3.1 Complete the sentences. Use am / is / are + one of these verbs:
building coming having playing cooking standing swimmin
Listen! Pat is playing the piano. They a new hotel in the city centre at the moment. Look! Somebody in the river. You on my foot.' 'Oh, I'm sorry.' Hurry up! The bus Where are you, George?' 'In the kitchen. I a meal.' In the telephone) 'Hello. Can I speak to Ann, please?' 'She a shower at the moment. Can you phone again later?' What's happening at the moment? Write true sentences.
1 (/ wash / my hair) I'm not washing my hair. 2 (it / snow) It is snowing. 3 (1 / sit / on a chair) 4 (1 / eat) 5 (it / rain) 6 (1 / learn / English) 7 (1 / listen / to the radio) 8 (the sun / shine) 9 (1 / wear / shoes) 10 (1 / smoke / a cigarette) 11 (1 / read / a newspaper) 13 What is the difference between picture A and picture B? Write two sentences each time use is / are (not) -ing.
5 A B B B A B B B A B B B A B B B A B B B A B B B A B
In A the man is smoking a cigarette. In he is eating an apple. In B he In B In B

UNIT 4 Are you -lng? (present continuous questions)

▶ Unit 3 I am doing (present continuous)

positive

question





2 000 00

- 'Are you feeling okay?' 'Yes, I'm feeling fine.'
- 'Is it raining?' 'Yes, take an umbrella.'
- Why are you wearing a coat? It's not cold today.
- 'What's Roy doing?' 'He's cooking the dinner.'- 'What are the children doing?' 'They're playing in the garden.
- Look! There's Jan. Where's she going?

The word order in these questions is:

short answers

No, I'm not.
No, $\left\{\begin{array}{l} \text{he's} \\ \text{she's} \\ \text{it's} \end{array}\right\}$ not. or No, $\left\{\begin{array}{l} \text{he} \\ \text{she} \\ \text{it} \end{array}\right\}$ isn't.
No, { we're you're they're } not. or No, { we you they're } aren't.

- 'Are you listening to the radio?' 'Yes, I am.'
 - 'Is Tom working today?' 'Yes, he is.'
 - 'Is it raining?' 'No, it isn't.'
- 'Are your friends staying at a hotel?' 'No, they aren't.'

UNIT 4 Exercises

4.1 Look at the pictures and ask a question. Choose one of these verbs: crying eating laughing going looking at reading 2 5 What is she reading 4 What 2 Where 5 What? ∃ \\
\text{hy}? 6 Why? Write the question 'What ... doing?' with different subjects. 3 (I)? The) What are he going? they) What doing? 4 (your wife) ? write the question 'Where ... going?' with these subjects. 5 we) Whate are we going ? those children)? the girl with long hair) the man on the bicycle)? Ask the questions. (Read the answers to the questions first.) Are you watching TV ? (you / watch / TV?) No, you can turn it off. (the children / play?) ? No, they're asleep. (what / you / do?)? I'm cooking my dinner. (what / Rod / do?) He's having a bath.? (it / rain?) No, not at the moment. (that clock / work?) ? No, it's broken. (you / write / a letter?)? Yes, to my sister. (why / you / run?) ? Because I'm late. Write positive or negative short answers (Yes, I am / No, It isn't etc.).

5 Are you eating something?

6 Are you feeling well?

7 Is the sun shining?

8 Is your mother wa'ching you?

UNIT 5 I do/work/like etc. (present simple)



They have a lot of books. They **read** a lot.



He's eating an ice-cream He **likes** ice-cream.

■ They read / I like / he likes etc. = the present simple:

I / we / you / they do read like work play watch he / she / it does reads likes works plays watches

Remember:

he / she / it -s: he likes (not 'he like') my sister plays it rains

— I live in London but my brother lives in Scotland.

have \rightarrow has: | have \rightarrow he / she / it has

Spelling ► Appendix 4 (4.1 and 4.2):

-es after -s / -ch / -sh: pass → passes watch → watches finish finishes

also: do → does go → goes

study → studies carry → carries

- We use the present simple for things that are true in general, or for things that happen sometimes or all the time:
 - I like big cities.
 - The shops open at 9 o'clock and close at 5.30.
 - He works very hard. He starts at 7.30 and finishes at 8 o'clock in the evening.
 - The Earth goes round the Sun.
 - We do a lot of different things in our free time.
 - She's very clever. She speaks four languages.
 - It costs a lot of money to stay at luxury hotels.
- We use the present simple with always / never / often / sometimes / usually:
 - He always gets up at 7 o'clock.
 - I usually go to work by car but I sometimes walk.
 - Jack eats very little. He never has breakfast itf the morning.
 - The weather here is not very good. It often rains.
- ► Unit 6 I don't... (present simple negative)
- ► Unit 7 Do you ...? (present simple questions)
- ► Unit 8 I am doing (present continuous) and I do (present simple)
- ► Unit88 Word order (alwaya / never / often etc.)

UNIT 5 Exercises

ishes

ppen

close cost cost teach wash	go have	like me	et open	
She's very clever. She speak Steve ten c Ve usually films. I ofter Water at 100 In Britain the banks The City Museum Food is expensive. It Shoes are expensive. They Ina is a teacher. She four job is very interesting. You Peter his ha Study this information:	igarettes a day. dinner at 7 o'clock. n	o the cinema morning. ry evening. ry. money. s to young ch	nildren.	
How often do you?	(1-1/2)	نض	You	
drink coffee in the morning?	Bob and Ann	George	you	
read newspapers?	often	usually never always	? ? ?	

UNIT 6 I don't... (present simple negative)

- ► Unit 5 I do/work/like etc. (present simple)
- The present simple negative is don't/doesn't + verb:



She doesn't smoke.



34

21

45

He doesn't work.

positive

we you they	work play do like
he she it	works plays does likes

negative

we you they	do not (don't)	work pjay
he she it	does not (doesn't)	do like

- I drink coffee but I don't drink tea.
- Sue drinks tea but she doesn't drink coffee.
- You don't speak English very well.
- They don't watch television very often.
- Rice doesn't grow in cold countries.
- We don't know many people in this town.
- We use don't / doesn't + infinitive (like / do / speak / work etc.):
 - I don't like washing the car. I don't do it very often.
 - She speaks Spanish but she doesn't speak Italian, (not 'she doesn't speaks')

Remember:

I / we / you / they don't — I don't like football. he / she / it doesn't

- He doesn't like football.
- I don't like Fred and Fred doesn't like me. (not 'Fred don't like')
- My car doesn't use much petrol, (not 'my car don't use')
- Sometimes he is late but it doesn't happen very often.
- ▶ Unit 7 Do you ... ? (present simple questions)

UNIT 6 Exercises

Leave the negative. I play the piano very well. Jack plays the p							
She k plans the piano very well. Jack Vou know the answer. She works very hard. They do the same thing every day. Write the opposite (positive or negative). Inderstand I don't understand. They know They They The doesn't want them. She loves him.	51 Ante the negative	ve.					
Inderstand I don't understand. 5 They speak English. 6 I don't want it. 7 She doesn't want them. 8 He lives in Rome. 9 He live	lack plays the piar know the answ works very ha	no very well. Jack ver rd			• • • • • • • • • • • • • • • • • • • •	••••••	very well.
Inderstand I don't understand. 5 They speak English. 6 I don't want it. 7 She doesn't want them. 8 He lives in Rome. 9 He live							
dassical music? yes no	nderstand I be doesn't smoke. by know. They	don't understand He smokes.	d. 5	I don't war She does	nt itn't want the	m	
dassical music? no yes ? yes no yes ? yes ? yes no ? and Rose like classical music. 3 Bill and Rose classical music. boxing. 4 dogs. classical music. boxing. 4 dogs. classical music. drive go know play see sell speke wash wear drive go know play see sell speke wash wear have a cigarette.' 'No, thank you I don't smoke. They newspapers in that shop. she has a car but she very often. to the cinema very often. the smells because he very often. she is married but she very often. much about politics.	53 Study the inform	ation and write ser	ntences with	n like.			
classical music. and Rose like classical music. classical music. classical music. boxing. 4 dogs. classical music. dogs. classical music. classical music. boxing. 4 dogs. classical music. dogs. classical music. classical music. dogs. classical music. dogs	Do you like_?	Bill and Rose	Carol	уои			
and Rose like classical music. Classical music.		yes	no	?	The second		
and Rose like classical music. Complete the sentences. All of them are negative. Use don't/doesn't + one of these verbs: drive go know play see sell specke wash wear Have a cigarette.' 'No, thank you. I don't smoke. They newspapers in that shop. They newspape			1	?			
classical music. and Rose boxing. 4 dogs. Complete the sentences. All of them are negative. Use don't/doesn't + one of these verbs: drive go know play see sell speke wash wear have a cigarette.' 'No, thank you. I don't smoke. They newspapers in that shop. They newspapers in that shop. They newspapers in that shop. The smells because he very often.			1				
drive go know play see sell speke wash wear Tave a cigarette.' 'No, thank you. I don't smoke. newspapers in that shop.	and Rose	classical	music.				dogs.
newspapers in that shop. newspapers in that shop. newspapers in that shop. to the cinema very often. smells because he very often. sa cheap hotel. It much to stay there. he kes football but he very often. much about politics.	L = Complete the ser	ntences. All of then	n are negati	ive. Use do	n't/doesn't	+ one of th	nese verbs
newspapers in that shop. The has a car but she very often. The smells because he very often. The smells but he very often. The smells because he very often.	drive go	know play	see	sell	smeke	wash	wear
	ane has a car but a smells because a cheap hotel. The kes football to the smells married but a cheap hotel.	se he	oout politics	very ofte	to thto thvery mucl	e cinema voften.	often. ery often.

UNIT 7 Do you ...? (present simple questions)

▶ Unit 5 I do/work/llke etc. (present simple)

► Unit 6 I don't... (present simple negative)

■ We use do/does in present simple questions:

positive

question

we you they	work play do like	do	we you they	work?
he she it	works plays does likes	does	he she it	do? like?



21

31

41

51

61 71 81

151

161 7.21

COS

12345678

9 10

20

4 E

5 E

6 E

The word order in these questions is:

do / does + subject

infinitive

Where How often What How much	Do do do do Does does does	you your parents they you you Chris it this word	usually often	work live? like wash do play cost mean?	on Saturdays? music? your hair? at weekends? tennis? to fly to Rome?
What	does	this word	3.0	mean?	

What do you do? = What's your job?

- 'What do you do?' 'I work in a bank.

Remember:

do I/we/you/they does he / she / it

- Do they like music?
- Does he like music?

short answers

I/we/you/they do. he / she / it does!

I we / you / they don't. he / she / it doesn't.

-- 'Do you smoke?' 'No, I don't.'

- 'Do they speak English?' 'Yes, they do.'

- 'Does he work hard?' 'Yes, he does.'

- 'Does your sister live in London?' 'No, she doesn't.'

► Unit 8 I am doing (present continuous) and I do (present simple)

UNIT 7 Exercises

Tou are asking somebody questions. Write questions with Do/Doet? I work
lay tennis. And you. Do you work hard ? lay tennis. And you? you ? lay tennis. And Ann? Ann ? know the answer. And you? the answer? ke hot weather. And you? ? smoke. And your father? ? do exercises every morning. And you? ? English. And your friends? ? want to be famous. And you? ?
These questions begin with Where/What/How?
wash my hair twice a week. (how often/you?) hajr ? ve in London. (where/you?) Where ? watch TV every day. (how often/you?) How ? have lunch at home. (where/you?) ? get up at 7.30. (what time/you?) ? go to the cinema a lot. (how often/you?) ? go to work by bus. (how/you?) ?
Ise the verbs in the list to make questions. Use the word(s) in brackets ().
do do go have like pray rain smoke speak
he) Does he often volleyball? you) Excuse me, English? you) What ? your sister) What ? she) ? it) How often in summer? you) dancing? they) What time usually to bed? you) What usually for breakfast? it) How much to stay at this hotel? Yes, he's a very good player. Yes, a little. I'm a secretary. She works in a shop. Yes, 20 cigarettes a day. Not often. It's usually dry. Yes, I love it. 10 o'clock. Toast and coffee. £ 30 a night.
Write positive or negative short answers (Yea, he does/No, I don't etc.).
No. I don't. Do you live in a big city? Do you drink a lot of coffee? Does your mother speak English? Do you play a musical instrument? Does it rain a lot where you live?

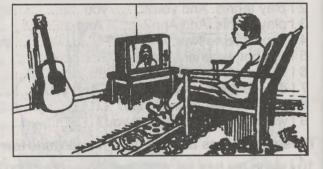
UNIT 8 I am doing (present continuous) and I do (present simple)

present continuous ► Units 5-7 present simple ▶ Units 3-4

Jim is watching television. He is not playing the guitar.

But Jim has a guitar. He often plays it and he plays very well.

Jim plays the guitar but he is not playing the guitar now.



W 2 D

W 3 D

4 D W

日本日田日日日日

10

11

12

No, he isn't. (present continuous) Is he playing the guitar?

Does	he play the guitar? Yes, he does. (present simple)	
Pres	sent continuous (I am doing) - now, at the time of speaking	g:
	I am doing	
past -	NOW —	future
	 Please be quiet. I'm working. Tom is having a shower at the moment. Take an umbrella. It's raining. You can turn off the television. I'm not watching it. Why are you under the table? What are you doing? 	
Pre	esent simple (I do) - in general, all the time or sometimes:	
	Ido	
past	NOW →	• future
-	 - I work every day from 9 o'clock until 5.00. - Tom has a shower every morning. - It rains a lot in winter. - I don't watch television very often. 	

- What do you usually do at the weekend?
- Do not use these verbs in the present continuous (I am -ing):

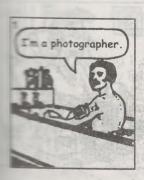
need prefer depend know want like love hate mean believe remember forget understand

Use the-present simple only (I want / do you like? etc.):

- I'm tired. I want to go home, (not 'I'm wanting1)
- 'Do you know that girl?' 'Yes, but I forget her name.'
- I don't understand. What do you mean?

UNIT 8 Exercises

Enailer the questions about the pictures.









he take photographs? Yes, he does. Is she driving a bus? No, he isn't. Is she doing? He's having a bath. Is she driving a bus? Is she driving a bus?
am / is / are / do / don't / does / doesn't.
you speak English? a cigarette.' 'No, thank you, I
the verb in the present continuous (I am doing) or present simple (I do).
is having (have) a shower at the moment. don't watch (not / watch) television very often. Somebody (sing). It watch (want) to go home now. Other (you / read) a newspaper? The me (sit) in my place. 'Oh, I'm sorry.' (not / understand). Please speak more slowly. The me (she / finish) work every day? The me (she / finish) work every day? The me (she / finish) to it. (not / usually / drive) to work.

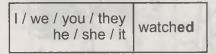
O'EBEKISTON RESPUBLIKASI
OLIY VA O'RTA MAXSUS TA'LIMI VAZIRLIGI
TOSHKENT VILOYATI CHIRCHIQ
DA'LAT PEDAGOGIKA INSTITUTI
AXEOROT RESURS MARKAZI

UNIT 9 I watched / cleaned / went etc. (past simple)

television every evening.
(present simple)

television yesterday evening.
(past simple)

watched is the past simple:



■ The past simple is often **-ed**. For example:

work → worked clean → cleaned stay → stayed live → lived

 $\begin{array}{ccc} \text{start} & \rightarrow & \text{started} \\ \text{dance} & \rightarrow & \text{danced} \end{array}$

YESTERDAY

EVENING ...

clean

smok

3 Be

4 Tr

6 W

7 M 8 W 9 Tc

10 It

11 Tr

9.21

2 ea

3 pa 4 mg

3.

4.

These verbs are regular verbs.

- I clean my teeth every morning. This morning I cleaned my teeth.

- Terry worked in a bank from 1981 to 1986.

- Yesterday it **rained** all morning. It **stopped** at lunchtime.

We enjoyed the party last might. We danced a lot and talked to a lot of people.
 The party finished at midnight.

Spelling ► Appendix 4 (4.2 and 4.4):

 $\begin{array}{ll} \text{study} \rightarrow \text{studied} & \text{marry} \rightarrow \text{married} \\ \text{stop} \rightarrow \text{stopped} & \text{plan} \rightarrow \text{planned} \end{array}$

Some verbs are *irregular* (not regular). The past simple is *not* **-ed**. Here are some important irregular verbs (see also Appendix 1-2):

begin → began break broke bring brought build built buy bought catch caught come came do did drink drank eat ate	fall → fell find found fly flew forget forgot get got give gave go went have had hear heard know knew	leave → left lose lost make made meet met pay paid put put read read ([red]) ring rang say said see saw	sell -> sold sit sat sleep slept speak spoke stand stood take took tell told think thought win won write wrote
--	---	---	--

- I usually get up early but this morning I got up at 9.30.

- We did a lot of housework vesterday.

- Caroline went to the cinema three times last week.

- Mr Todd came into the room, took off his coat and sat down.

► Unit 10 I didn't ... Did you ...? (past simple negative and questions)

mple)

UNIT 9 Exercises

die enjoy finish happen live open play rain TREAL start stay want watch watched television. my teeth three times yesterday. 20 cigarettes yesterday evening. at 7.30 and at 10 o'clock. accident last Sunday afternoon. a was a child, I to be a doctor. from 1756 to 1791. our holiday last year. We at a very good hotel. the weather is nice, but yesterday it the window. weather was good yesterday afternoon, so we tennis. Shakespeare in 1616. the past of these verbs. got 11 buy 6 leave 16 put 12 know 17 tell 7 see 8 go 13 stand 18 lose B 720 9 hear 14 take 19 think STILL *********** 10 find 15 do 20 speak sentences about the past (yesterday / last week etc.). aways goes to work by car. Yesterday he went to work by cat. always get up early. This morning they last Saturday. 4 letter to Jane every week. Last week meets her friends every evening. She yesterday evening. y read two newspapers every day yesterday. come to my house every Friday. Last Friday

buy a new car every year. Last year an orange every day. Yesterday last Monday. last Monday. last Monday. last Monday. last Monday. last weekend takes photographs. Last weekend this morning. this morning. sentences about yourself. What did you do yesterday or what happened yesterday?

Description ete these sentences. Use one of these verbs in the past simple:

me

people.

ce d

ght

UNIT 10 I didn't ... Did you ...? (past simple

negative and questions)

► Unit 9 I watched / cle aned / went etc. (past simple)

We use **did** in past simple negatives and questions:

infinitive watch clean play do go

have

begin

positive			
we you they he	watched cleaned played did went		
she it	had began		

negative			
1			
MA	-		

we you they he she it	1 (1(1
-----------------------	--------

question

did	we you they he she it	watch? clean? play? do? go? have? begin?

10.1 1 Isa

2 The

3 We 4 She

5 Jac

10.2

1 | WE

21en

3 l ha

41gc

5 | sle

10.3

1 (wa

2 (ge

3 (ha 4 (bu

5 (sp 6 (do

7 (ea

8 (90

11 m

2 Hai

31s 4 The

STh

6 Pal 7 W. 8 It c

10.5 21... 2 We 3 Th

4 Sh

5"_

■ do / does (present) → did (past):

- I don't watch television very often.
- I didn't watch television yesterday.
- Does she often go out?
- Did she go out last night?
- We use did / didn't + infinitive (watch / clean / do etc.): I

watched but I didn't watch (not 'I didn't watched') he went but did he go? (not 'did he went?')

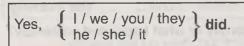
- I played tennis yesterday but I didn't win.

- Don didn't have breakfast this morning, (not 'Don hadn't breakfast')
- They went to the cinema but they didn't enjoy the film.
- We didn't do much work yesterday.
- Note the word order in questions with **did**:

+ infinitive did + subject

What d	Did Sue did you did the accident did your parents	do happen?	you a birthday present? yesterday evening? for their holidays?
--------	---	------------	--

short answers



No,	{ I / we / you / they he / she / ft	} didn't.
-----	-------------------------------------	-----------

- 'Did you see Joe yesterday?' 'No, I didn't.'

- 'Did it rain on Sunday?' 'Yes, it did.'

- 'Did Helen come to the party?' 'No, she didn't.'

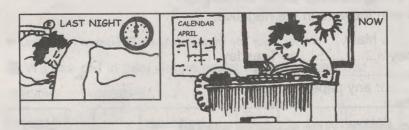
- 'Did your friends have a good holiday?' 'Yes, they did.'

watch? clean? play? do? go? have? begin?

complete these sentence	es with the verb in the negative.	
John but I didn't see worked on Monday but we went to the shop but we had a pen but she	they on Tuesday to the bank any paper.	
are asking someboo	ly questions. Write questions with Did?	
ed the party. And you' a good holiday. And you early this morning. A	you? Did you watch TV last night. you? you u? und you?	? ? ?
at did you do yesterd	ay? (Your sentence can be positive or negative.)	
TV) I watched TV before 7.30) a shower) magazine) magazine)	yesterday. (or I didn't watch TV yesterday, I I	••••
questions with Wh	o / What / How / Why?	
simebody. weed. conebody. conebody. conedition in the cone cone cone cone cone cone cone con	Who did you meet What time Harry Who you What What time Why What for dinned	? ? ? ? ?
e verb in the corre	ct form of the past (positive, negative or question).	
(play) tennis (wait) a lor ce shirt. Where (see) me b (it / rain) yester	s yesterday but I (not / win). ng time for the bus but it (not / come). (you / buy) it? but she (not / speak) to me. day?' 'No, it was a nice day.' b. Why (you / do) it?	

idn't.

UNIT 11 was / were



Now Charlie is at work.

11.1

2 Ca

3 Su 11.2

16

2 Ti 31

41 5 W 6 D 7 V 8 4 9 T 10 V 11 C 12 1 11.3 T W

2 Ka

310

4 GE

5 Th

6" ..

11.4

1234

At midnight last night he wasn't at work.

He was in bed. He was asleep.

am / is (present) → was (past):

- I am tired (now).
 Is she at home (now)?
- The weather is nice today.

I was tired last night. Was she at home yesterday morning? The weather was nice yesterday.

are $(present) \rightarrow were (past)$:

- You are late (now).They aren't here (now).

You were late yesterday. They weren't here last Sunday.

positive

he she	was
it we you they	were

negative

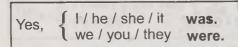
l he she it	was not (wasn't)
we you they	were not (weren't)

auestion

was	l? he? she? it?
were	we? you? they?

- Last year she was 22, so she is 23 now.
- When I was a child, I was afraid of dogs.
- We were tired after the journey but we weren't hungry.
- The hotel was very comfortable and it wasn't expensive.
- Where were you at 3 o'clock yesterday afternoon?
- Was the weather good when you were on holiday?
- Those shoes are nice. Were they expensive?
- Why was he angry yesterday?

short answers



I / he / she / it wasn't. No. we / you / they weren't.

- 'Were you late?1 'No, I wasn't.'
- 'Was Ted at work yesterday?1 'Yes, he was.'
- 'Were they at the party?' 'No, they weren't.'

Exercises

e is at work.
last night helpork.

morning?

lay.

eep,

at the pictures. Where were these people at 3 o'clock yesterday afternoon?

		3 PLATFO		* 64	- N N N N N N N N N N N N N N N N N N N
GEORGE	CAROL AND JECK	SUE	Mr and Mrs BAKER	BEN	2
	Silve House Income				

arge was in bed.	4
and Jack	5
	6 And you? I

am / Is / are / was / were. Some sentences are present and some are past.

the weather nice, but yesterday it cold. nungry. Can I have something to eat?

hungry last night, so I had something to eat.

you at 11 o'clock last Friday morning?

The buy those shoes. They too expensive.

you so angry yesterday?

= = st go now. It very late.

e last year I in Paris.

tired when we arrived home, so we went to bed.

Chaplin died in 1978. He a famous film star.

the children?' 'I don't know. They in the garden ten minutes ago.

was / wasn't / were / weren't.

very clean.

married when she 24 years old.

you yesterday evening but you at home. Whereyou?

Arte questions.



I saw a film.\(^1\) met some people.
I did an examination.
I bought some boots.
I went to a museum.



(good?) . Was it good	?
(friendly?)	?
(difficult?)	?
(expensive?)	
(interesting?)	?

UNIT 12 I was doing (past continuous)

Now it is 6 o'clock.
Sarah is at home.
She is watching television.

At 4 o'clock she wasn't at home. She was at the sports club. She was playing tennis. She wasn't watching television.



what

2 Ca

3 To

6An

12.2 for €

3 At 12.1

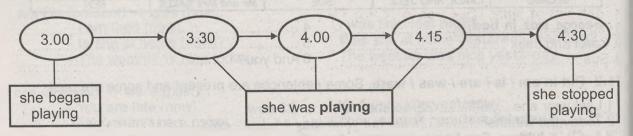
200

300

4 (2

5 (V

Wri



was / were -ing (doing / playing / working etc.) is the past continuous tense:

D	o	Si	ti	V	е

he she it	was -ing
we you they	were -ing

negative

• I he she it	was not (wasn't)	-ing
we you they	was not (weren't)	-ing

question

was	he she it	-ing?
were	we you they	-ing?

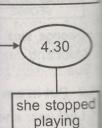
- 'What were you doing at 11.30 yesterday?' 'I was working.'
- 'What did he say?' 'I don't know. I wasn't listening.'
- It was raining, so we didn't go out.
- In 1980 they were living in Canada.
- Today she's wearing a skirt, but yesterday she was wearing trousers.
- I woke up early yesterday. It was a beautiful morning. The sun was shining and the birds were singing.
- am / is / are -ing (present) → was / were -ing (past):
 - I'm working (now).
 - It isn't raining (now).
 - What are you doing (now)?
- I was working at 10.30 last night.
 It wasn't raining when we went out.
 - What were you doing at 3 o'clock?

Spelling (make → making run → running lie → lying etc.) ► Appendix 4 (4.3 and 4.4)

▶ Unit 13 I was doing (past continuous) and I did (past simple)

UNIT 12 Exercises (250) phiob 25W

4-o'clock



-ing?

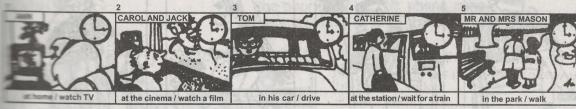
-ing?

shining and the

right. ent out. clock?

dix 4 (4.3 and 4 -

at the pictures. Where were these people at 3 o'clock yesterday afternoon? And were they doing? Write two sentences for each picture.



was at home. She was watching TV

and Jack They ed you? |

Serah did a lot of things yesterday morning. Look at the pictures and then write a sentence meach picture.



24 3 o'clock	5 At 8.15 6 At 10.30
write questions. Use was / were -Ing.	prior view without (prone ver)
/ do / when you saw him?)	? ? ?
when you went out?)	?

at the picture. You saw Joe in the street yesterday afternoon. What was he doing? prositive or negative sentences.



she was washing her car.

1 (he / wear /a jacket) ... He wasn't wearing a jacket. 2 (he / smoke / a pipe)..... 3 (he / carry / a bag) 4 (he / carry / an umbrella) 5 (he / go / to the dentist) 6 (he / wear / a hat)

4 At 12.50

UNIT 13 I was doing (past continuous) and I did (past simple)



Jack was reading a book.



The phone rang.



He stopped reading.

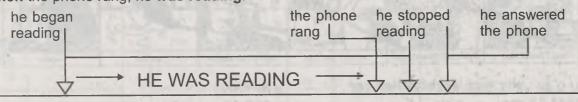


He answered the phone.

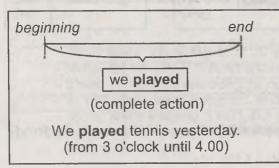
What happened? The phone rang. (past simple)
What was Jack doing when the phone rang?
He was reading a book. (past continuous)
What did he do when the phone rang?

He stopped reading and answered the phone. (past simple)

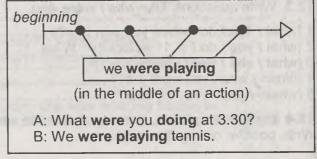
Jack began reading *before* the phone rang. So: **When** the phone rang, he **was reading.**



past simple



past continuous



10

- Jack was reading the newspaper when the phone rang.
- but Jack read the newspaper yesterday.
 - Were you watching television when I phoned you? Did you watch the film on television last night?

but

- I started work at 9.00 and finished at 4.30. At 2.30 I was working.
- When we went out, it was raining. (= it started raining before we went out)
- I saw Lucy and Tom this morning. They were standing at the bus-stop.
- Joy fell asleep while she was reading. (while ► Unit 93)

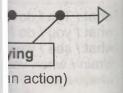
- Joy lell asleep wille sile was reading. (wille

and I did

Hellol

answered the ne.

he answered the phone



g at 3.30? inis.

went out)
s-stop.

Exercises

at the pictures and write sentences. Use the past continuous or past simple.

[Jack/read/a book]...Jack was reading a book...

(the phone/ring) The phone rang.
(he/answer/the phone) He answered the phone.







(Tom / walk / down the street) Tom (he / see / Jack) (he / say / hello) (they / sit / in the garden) (it / start / to rain) (they / go / into the house) (Carol / paint / the room) (she / fall / off the ladder) (she / break / her arm)

the verb into the past continuous (I was doing) or past simple (I did).

wewent (go) out, itwas raining (rain).	
thungry last night. Ididn't .eat (not / eat) anything	
wasn't at home when I went to see her. She (work).	
(wash),	
(dress) and then I(have) breakfast.	
come) while I (have) breakfast.	
(meet) Joan at the party. She(wear) (wear)	а
Tect cress.	
boys (break) a window when they (play)	
Postall.	
ate but my friends (wait) for me when I	
NEL CONTROL OF THE PARTY OF THE	
(get) up at 7 o'clock. The sun (shine), so I	
(go) for a walk.	
(happen) (not / drive) fast when the accident	

(not / drive) fast when the accident (happen fast) (not /go) to work yesterday. She was ill.

(you / do) on Saturday evening?' 'I went to the cinema.'

(you / do) at 9.30 on Saturday evening?'

(watch) a film in the cinema.'

UNIT 14 have / has (got)

You can say have or have got, has or has got:

we you they	we you they	have got	(I've got) (we've got) (you've got) (they've got)
he she it has	he she it	has got	(he's got) (she's got) (it's got)



- I've got blue eyes. (or I have blue eyes.)

- Tim has got two sisters. (or Tim has two sisters.)

She's got a headache. or She has a headache.

- They like animals. They've got a horse, three dogs and six cats.

- This car has got four doors.

- I don't feel very well. I've got a headache.

		4.7	
- 10	001	つする	1/0
- 1 1	ega	711	VC
	-3.		

we you they	have not (haven't)	got
he she it	has not (hasn't)	got

question

have	l we you they	got?
has	he she it	30.1

short answers

Yes, No,	we you they	have. haven't.
Yes No,	he she it	has. hasn't.

- I've got a motorbike but I haven't got a car.
- Mr and Mrs Harrison haven't got any children.
- It's a nice house but it hasn't got a garden.'Have you got a camera?' 'Yes, I have.'
- 'What have you got in your bag?' 'Nothing. It's empty.'
- 'Has Ann got a car?' 'Yes, she has.'
- What kind of car has she got?
- In negatives and guestions you can also use do / does + have:
 - They don't have any children. (= They haven't got any children.)
 - It's a nice house but it doesn't have a garden. (= it hasn't got a garden)
 - Does Ann have a car? (= Has Ann got a car?)
 - How much money do you have? (= How much money have you got?)
- The past is had. In negatives and questions we use did + have (► Units 9-10):
 - I had some money. I didn't have any money. Did you have any money?

T 14 Exercises

4 she has not got	? ? ? ?
and write sentences Im and yourself. a camera a bicycle black hair no no no	ou? ? ? ?
have have live got black hair. By lim has got a camera. 8 (Ann/two brothers) 8 (Ann/two brothers) 9 (Jim/black hair) 10 (Ann/a bicycle) 11 (Jim/a sister) 12 (I/brothers/sisters)	
have got ('ve got), has got ('s got), haven't got or hasn't got. a animals. They	

UNIT 15 I have done (present perfect 1)









They are at home.



They are going out.



They have gone out. (= they are not at home now)

■ has cleaned / have gone etc. is the present perfect (have / has + past participle *):

we you they	have ('ve) have not (haven't)	cleaned finished done been
he she it	has ('s) has not (hasn't)	bought taken begun

have <	we you they	cleaned? finished? done? been?
has	he she it	bought? taken? begun?

- We use the present perfect for an action in the past with a result now:
 - I've lost my passport. (= I can't find my passport now)
 - She's (= she has) gone to bed. (= she is in bed now) - We've bought a new car. (= we have a new car now)
 - It's Kay's birthday tomorrow and I haven't bought her a present
 - 'Hob is on holiday.' 'Oh, where has he gone?'
 - 'Are they still having dinner?' 'No, they've finished.'

★ The past participle of regular verbs is **-ed**:

clean → have cleaned finish → have finished stop → have stopped

The past participle of irregular verbs is sometimes the same as the past simple and sometimes different. For example:

the same: lose \rightarrow have lost make \rightarrow have made different: do \rightarrow have done see \rightarrow have seen

have → have had write → have written

For a list of irregular past participles see Appendix 1-2.

Have you over ...? (present perfect 2) ► Unit 16

▶ Unit 17 How long have you ...? (present perfect 3)

I have done (present perfect) and I did (past simple) ► Unit 19

►Unit 89 present perfect + yet

15

pa

23456789

10

at the pictures. What has happened?

ned? ned? e?

n? ght? n? un?

ped iple and

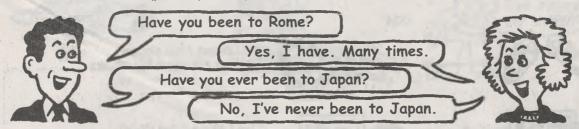
present perfect 3 rfect + yet

before	now	for and on solt
		(he / clean / his shoes) He has cleaned his shoes.
□		(she / close / the door) She
	國國	(they / go / to bed)
	(A) (C) (C)	(it / stop / raining)
€		(he / have / a bath)
		(the picture / fall / down)
ete the sentences	with a verb from the lis	st. Use the present perfect (have/has + the
buy finish d	o go go l	ose paint read take
nere?' 'No, he	e new shoes. Do you v to w the shopping n'know. I	vant to see them? ork.' g?' 'No, I'm going to do it later.' it.'

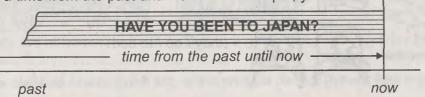
cuse looks different. you it?

UNIT 16 Have you ever ...? (present perfect 2)

▶ Unit 15 I have done (present perfect 1)



We use the *present perfect* (have been / have played / have done etc.) when we talk about a time from the past until now – for example, your life:



- 'Have you been to France?' (in your life) 'No, I haven't.'
- I've been to Canada but I haven't beea to the United States.
- She is an interesting person. She has done many different jobs and has visited many countries.
- I've seen that woman before but I can't remember when.
- How many times has Brazil won the World Cup?
- 'Have you read this book?' 'Yes, I've read it twice.' (= two times)
- You can use the present perfect + ever (in questions) and never:
 - 'Has Ann ever been to Australia?' 'No, never.'
 - 'Have you ever played golf?' 'Yes, once. (= one time)
 - My mother has never travelled by air.
 - I've never ridden a horse.

gone and been



He's **gone** to Spain. (= he is in Spain *now*)



12345678

He's **been** to Spain. (= he went to Spain but *now he is back*)

Compare:

- I can't find Susan. Where has she gone? (= Where is she now?)
- Oh, hello, Susan. I was looking for you. Where have you been?
- ▶ Unit 19 I have done (present perfect) and I did (past simple)

en we talk

as visited

Exercises -VIT 16

are asking Ann questions beginning Have you ever ? Write the questions

The second state of free and according to the large of		45.15
1	18	ANN
Pans?) Have you ever been to Pari ay/golf?) Have you ever played go -ustralia?) Have case your passport?) seep/in a park?) at I Chinese food?) ww York?) and a lot of money?) seak/your leg?)	Plf ? Yes, many times.	
at Ann's answers in Exercise 1. Wi	rite sentences about Ann and yourself.	
The second second second second	You	
has never been to Paris.		
played golf many times.	I have been to Paris twice.	
as played golf many times.	_ l	
es played golf many times.		
™s played golf many times.	 	
nes played golf many times.		



is back)

gone or been.

==eet / a lot of interesting people) married five times)

out.

new restaurant in town. Have you to it?

5 3 wonderful city. I've there many times.

here earlier but I think she's now.

UNIT 17 How long have you ...? (presentperfect 3)

31

5161

9

17.

12345678

9

10

21

41

FRIDAY How Long have Since you been in Monday London? Jill is on holiday in London. She arrived in London on Monday. Today is Friday. How long has she been in London? since Monday. She has been in London for four days. in London now. (is = present) She is since Monday. (has been = present perfect) She has been in London for four days. She is in London now. since Monday. past She has been in London for four days. Monday now (Friday) Compare: present perfect present simple He has been in Canada since April. Harry is in Canada. but (not 'He is in Canada since April.') How long have you been married? Are you married? but (nor 'How long are you married?') How long have you known her? Do you know Sarah? but (not 'How long do you know her?') I've known her for a long time. Linda lives in London. How long has she lived in London? but She has lived there all her life. We have a car. How long have you had your car? but We've had it for a year. present continuous present perfect continuous (have been -ing) How long have you been learning German? I'm learning German, but I've been learning German for six weeks. It's been (= it has been) raining since I got It's raining. but up this morning.

perfect 3

Exercises

inlete these sentences



sent perfect)

? ? ? ? ?
?
?







a sentence for each picture. Use the words below the pictures.







ears

since Sunday for two hours

all day

all her life

for five years

SALDIE	been	married	tor	ten	years.

television	
all day	/.

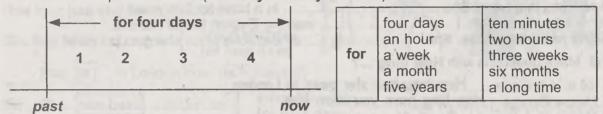
UNIT 18 for since ago

- ► Unit 17 How long have you ...? (present perfect 3)
- for and since:

We use for and since to say how long:

Jill has been in London { for four days. since Monday.

We use for + a period of time (four days / two years etc.):



18.

25

31

41

51

18

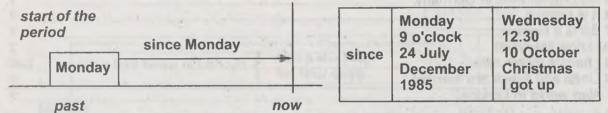
3

41

THE.

1000 - 1000 to to to to

We use since + the start of the period (Monday / 9 o'clock etc.):



Compare:

- Barry has been in Canada since January. (= from January to now)
 Barry has been in Canada for six months. (not 'since six months')
- I've known her **since 1980**. (= from 1980 to now)
 I've known her **for a long time**. (*not* 'since a long time')
- ▶ Unit 92 from... to until since for
- ago = before now:
 - Susan **started** her new job **two weeks ago**. (= two weeks before now)
 - 'When **did Tom** go out?' 'Ten minutes ago.' (= ten minutes before now)
 - I had dinner an hour ago. (= an hour before now)
 - Life was very different a hundred years ago.

We use ago with the past simple (did / had / started etc.).

Compare ago and for:

- When did she arrive in London? She arrived in London four days ago.
- How long has she been in London? She has been in London for four days.

Exercises Exercises

minutes hours e weeks nonths ng time

ednesday .30 October pristmas ot up

now)

	· Leitheritz
for or alnce.	
Monday. Jeen in Londonfor four days. Jean in Londonfor a long time. He has lived in Australia	years. en empty many years. 7 o'clock. 1947.
was? Use ago in your answers.	
as meal?	6 the last time you drank coffee?
December?	7 the lasttime you were in a car?
me you were ill??	8 the last time you read a newspaper?
How long has she been in London How long have they been married When did they get married? es) When did Dan arrive? When did you buy those shoes How long has she been learnin	rackets () + for or ago. four days ago n? for four days ? g English?
ete the sentences with for or sin	
London now. She arrived there four there. He arrived here on Thursday. He get the started an hour ago. It's been the same of t	days ago. She has been there for four days. e has e hs ago. They've
earning)	h the words in brackets ().

UNIT 19 I have done (presentperfect) and I did (past simple)

► Units 15-17 (present perfect)

► Units 9-10 (past simple)

2345

23

4

that

2 H 31

41 5 V

6 G

7 V 8 N

TM

2 W

41 5 W

7 M

81

9 W

10 k

11 J

12 L

We use the past simple (did / arrived / saw / was etc.) with a finished time (yesterday / last week / in 1986 / six months ago etc.):

past + finished time

We arrived	yesterday last week at 3 o'clock in 1986 six months ago		nished time yesterday last week months ago	7 7 2 2 7 1 1 2 1 1 2 1 1 2 1 1 2 1 1 2 1 1 1 1
		— past ————		now

- We do not use the present perfect (have done / have arrived / have been etc.) with a finished time:
 - I saw Jack yesterday. (not 'I have seen Jack yesterday.')
 - Where were you last night? (not 'Where have you been last night?')
 - We didn't have a holiday last year. (not 'We haven't had')
 - I got up at 7.15. I washed, dressed and then I had breakfast.
 - William Shakespeare (1564-1616) was a writer. He wrote many plays and poems.
 (not '... has been a writer ... has written many plays')

Use the past simple to ask When? or What time?:

- When did they arrive? (not 'When have they arrived?')
- Compare:

past simple present perfect I have lost my key. I lost my key yesterday. but (= I can't find it now) Bill has gone home. Bill went home ten minutes ago. but (= he isn't here now) Have you seen Ann? When did you see Ann? (= where is she now?) time until now (present perfect) finished time (past simple) finished time time until now past now now past Did you go to Spain last year? Have you ever been to Spain? but (= in your life, until now) My friend is a writer. He has written Shakespeare wrote many plays and but many books. We lived in Glasgow for six years but We've lived in Singapore for six years. but now we live in Singapore. (we live there now)

en etc.) with a

lays and poems

nutes ago.

ast year?

apore.

nany plays and

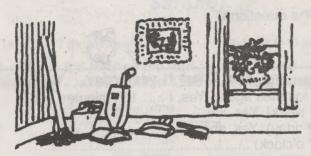
for six years but

weeks.

Exercises

see the words in brackets () to answer the questions. (yesterday) Yes I lost it yesterday. Have you lost your key? Have you seen Alan? (ten minutes ago) Yes, I ten minutes ago. -are you painted the gate? (last week) Yes, we it it (on Friday) Yes, she..... Sarah gone to France? Have they had dinner? (at 7 o'clock) te started his new job? (vesterday) puestions with When ...? and What time ...? What time did they arrive have arrived. E has gone out. What time We seen Carol. When you When es left her job. sentences the verbs are underlined. Are they right or wrong? Correct the verbs are wrong RIGHT and last week. WRONG Did you see seen Pam last week? shed my work. shed my work at 2 o'clock. you finished your work? <u>as left school three years ago.</u> 'She's gone to the cinema. Bonaparte has died in 1821. ever been to Britain? seen you at the party on Saturday. has been very bad last week. verb in the present perfect (I have done) or the past simple (I did). writer. She has written (write) many books. have (not / have) a holiday last year. (you / see) Alan last week? (play) tennis yesterday afternoon. (you / go) to bed last night? (you / ever / be) to the United States? _____ s dean. I (wash) it. (wash) my hair before breakfast this morning. not / like) sport. ravelling. She (visit) many countries. work) there for three years. (go) to Finland for a holiday. We (stay) there for

UNIT 20 it is done / it was done (passive)



The room **is cleaned** every day.

The room **was cleaned** yesterday.

20

2345

6

20

234

56700

10

20

sh

1234567891

33

21

23

Compare: Somebody cleans the room every day. (active)

The room is cleaned every day. (passive)

Somebody cleaned the room yesterday. (active)

The room was cleaned yesterday. (passive)

■ The passive is:

past participle

present am / is / are (not) + cleaned done exported made damaged broken

The past participle of *regular* verbs is **-ed** (clean**ed** / damag**ed** etc.). For a Ust of *irregular* past participles (**made** / **seen** etc.), see Appendix 1–2.

- Butter is made from milk.
- Oranges are imported into Britain.
- How often are these rooms cleaned?
- I am never invited to parties.
- This house was built 100 years ago.
- These houses were built 100 years ago.
- When was the telephone invented?
- I wasn't invited to the party last week.
- Six people were injured in the accident yesterday.

Two trees were blown down in the storm last night.

We say was / were born:

- I was born in London in 1958. (not 'I am born')
- Where were you born?

passive + by ...:

- We were woken up by the noise. (= The noise woke-us up.)
- The telephone was invented by Alexander Bell in 1876.
- My brother was bitten by a dog last week.

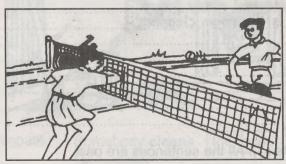
ery day.

vesterday.

st of irregular

UNIT 21 What are you doing tomorrow?

(present for the future)





They are playing tennis now.

She is playing tennis tomorrow.

- We use am / is / are -ing (present continuous) for something happening now ((Units 3-4).
 - 'Where are George and Sue?' 'They're playing tennis in the park.'
 - Please be quiet. I'm working.

We also use **am / is / are -ing** for the *future* (tomorrow / next week etc.):

- Carol is playing tennis tomorrow.
- I'm not working next week.

I am doing something tomorrow = I have arranged to do something, I have a plan to do something:

- Alice is going to the dentist on Friday.
 (= she has an appointment with the dentist)
- They are going to a concert tomorrow evening, (they have tickets for the concert)
- Are you meeting Bill this evening?(= have you and Bill arranged to meet?)
- What are you doing at the weekend?
- I'm not going out tonight. I'm staying at home.

You can also say 'I'm going to do something1 ((► Unit 22).

- Do *not* use the present simple (I go / do you go? etc.) for arrangements:
 - I'm going out this evening. (not 'I go')
 - Are you going out tonight? (not 'do you go')
 - Ann isn't coming to the party next week. (not 'Ann doesn't come')

But we use the present simple for timetables, programmes, trains etc.:

- The concert starts at 7:30.
- What time does the train leave?

Study the difference:

- I'm going to a concert this evening.
 The concert starts at 7.30.

I'm going - present continuous: usually for people

The concert starts – present simple: for programmes, trains etc.



TES.

210

47

SiT

is tomorro

tomorrow.

OW ((► Units 3

ave a plan II

Dic	k			
go	/ to	the	cinema	

Tom and Sue go / to a party

Barbara meet / Dave

George go / on holiday

playir	ng tenn	is on	Friday	/

4	***************************************	
5		

some sentences about yourself. What are you doing in the next few days?

at home tonight.	4
the theatre on Monday	5
	6

questions. All the sentences are future.

1	ionight?) Are you going out tonight	
	next week?)	
Į,	do / tomorrow evening?) What	
	Bob and Sue / come?)	?
ż	go / on holiday?)	
	The state of the s	

The mords in brackets () to write sentences. All the sentences are future. Use the inuous (he is leaving etc.) or present simple (it leaves etc.).

cut/tonight) I'm not going out tonight.
start / at 8.15) The concert starts at 8.15
mends this evening) 1
Tom
Dourse / finish / on 10 May) The
get / married next December) My
■ e / at 8.45)
London tomorrow)

sare questions. All the sentences are future.

e	e train / leave?)	What time	,
e/	leave / tomor	row?)	
te	get married?)	, , , , , , , , , , , , , , , , , , , ,	1
he	Fed English course	hegin?)	

UNIT 22 I'm going to ...

this evening ...

I'm going to watch TV this evening ...

She is going to watch TV this evening.

■ We use am / is / are going to ... for the future:

he / she / it we / you / they	am is (not) are	going to	do drink watch
----------------------------------	-----------------------	----------	----------------------

am is he / she / it we / you / they	going to	buy? eat? wear?
-------------------------------------	----------	-----------------------

I am going to do something = I have decided to do something, my intention is to do something:

l decided to do it past present presen

- I'm going to buy some books tomorrow.
- Sarah is going to sell her car.
- I'm not going to have breakfast this morning. I'm not hungry.
- What are you going to wear to the party on Saturday?
- 'Your hair is dirty.' 'Yes, I know. I'm going to wash it.'
- Are you going to invite John to your party?
- You can say that something **is going to happen** when it is clear *now* that it is sure to happen:
 - Look at the sky! It's going to rain.
 (black clouds now → rain)
 - Oh dear! It's 9 o'clock and I'm not ready.
 I'm going to be late.
 (9 o'clock now and not ready → late)



22.

1.5 2 H

11 (5

200

4 (w

10.10

22.3

Sto.

2 -

3 1

- N

22.4

Bat

- 14

210

a Jo 4 Tai

Si'm Si's

TIE

- We also use the present continuous (I am -ing) for the future, usually for arrangements (► Unit 21):
 - I am playing tennis with Jack tomorrow.

5 to do

mese people going to do?



	5 6
going to do these things tomorro	w?
Defore 6.30)	(or I'm going to buy a car.
the morning)	
e plestions. Use going to	A ST AND AND A STATE OF THE PARTY.
Tom / phone you tonight?)	you going to wear to the party
the sentences. Use going to	+ one of these verbs:
lie rain study	walk wash
this	le engineering. sandwich.
down	

????

UNIT 23 will / shall (1)



Bill **is** 24 years old now. Last year he **was** 23. **Next year** he **will be** 25.

will + infinitive (will be / will win / will come etc.):

positive and negative

question

be win come will not (won't)

will

I / we / you / they he / she / it

be?
win?
come?
eat?

these di

will = 'II: |'II (= | will) / you'II / she'II etc. will not = won't: | won't (= | will not) / you won't / it won't etc.

- We use will for the *future* (tomorrow / next week etc.):
 - She travels a lot. Today she is in London. Tomorrow she'll be in Rome. Next week she'll be in Tokyo.

- Telephone me this evening. I'll be at home.

- Leave the old bread in the garden. The birds will eat it.
- We'll probably go out this evening.Will you be at home this evening?
- I won't be here tomorrow. (= I will not be here)
- Don't drink coffee before you go to bed. You won't sleep.

We often say I think ... will ...:

- I think Diana will pass the exam.
- I don't think it will rain this afternoon.
- Do you think the examination will be difficult?

But do not use will for things you have already arranged to do or decided to do (▶ Units 21-2:

- We're going to the theatre on Saturday, (not 'we will go')
- Are you working tomorrow? (not 'will you work')

m shall

You can say I shall (= I will) and we shall (= we will):

- I shall be late tomorrow. or I will (I'll) be late tomorrow.
- I think we shall win. or I think we will (we'll) win.

But don't use shall with you / they / he / she / it. (not 'he shall be late')

► Unit 24 will / shall (2)

Exercises

u / they

WITH

s going on a European tour next month. Look at her plans. Where will she be on

Sel be in Paris.	6-9 9-11 11-15 16-22 23-28	Paris Murich Vierra Rome Athens
you be? Write sentences about yourself. Use where I'll be. 10 o'clock) I'll probably be on the beach. or. I don't om now)	know where !	II be)
You won't sleep. 3 It will happe 4 You'll find it.	***************************************	
Think Diana will pass the exame game) I think think the present) be nice tomorrow) contences with I don't think amed) I don't		
these sentences are <u>underlined</u> . Which are ri	ght? Study Unit	21 before you do
are going to the theatre tonight. We've got the sight.) loare vou doing tomorrow evening?' 'Nothing away tomorrow morning. My train is at 8.40 and / he's lending you some money. He's very putting on your coat?' 'I'll go out/I'm going out are will phone / is phoning us tonight? ls on Saturday. She'll work / She's working.	ng. I'm free.' rich.	

UNIT 24 will / shall (2)

► Unit 23 will / shell (1)





3

4

6

24.2

TES

3 I fe

34.3

3 1 78

2708

61h;

- You can use I'll ... (= I will) when you offer or decide to do something:
 - 'My case is very heavy.' 'I'll carry it for you.'
 - 'I'll phone you tomorrow, okay?' 'Okay, goodbye.'

We often say I think I'll / I don't think I'll ... when we decide to do something:

- I'm tired. I think I'll go to bed early tonight.
- It's a nice day. I think I'll sit in the garden.
- It's raining. I don't think I'll go out.

Don't use the present simple (I go / I phone etc.) in sentences like these:

- I'll phone you tomorrow, okay? (not 'I phone you')
- I think I'll go to bed early, (not 'I go to bed')

Don't use I'll ... for something you decided before (► Units 21-2):

- I'm working tomorrow, (nor 'I'll work')
- I'm going to watch TV tonight, (not 'I'll watch')
- What are you doing at the weekend? (not 'what will you do')
- Shall I ...? / Shall we ...?



Shall I / Shall we ...? = Do you think this is a good thing to do? Do you think this is a good idea?

- It's warm in this room. Shall I open the window?
- 'Shall I phone you this evening?' 'Yes, please.'
- I'm going to a party tonight. What shall I wear?
- It's a nice day. Shall we go for a walk?
- Where shall we go for our holidays this year?
- 'Let's go out this evening.' 'Okay, what time shall we meet?' (Lot's ▶ Unit 48)

ye. I'll none you morrow, say?

	= = trie sentences. Use I	will (I II) + one of these verbs:
B	carry do eat	send show sit stay
-	case is very heavy. Enjoy your holiday. Son't want this banana. You coming with me? Did you phone Jack? Do you want a chair? You use this camera?	T'll carry it for you. Thank you. I you a postcard. Weli, I'm hungry it. No, I don't think so here. Oh no, I forgot it now. No, it's okay. on the floor. Give it to me and you.
	the sentences. Use I	I think I'll or I don't think I'll + one of these
	con'ts too expensive. I	out
	ster every Friday. the shopping yet. Loo drive.' 'Okay, I drive.' 'Sually go to work?' 'Sually go to work?' 'Sually go.' 'I lend you	ay? WRONG I'll phone RIGHT do it later. 2.' I drive.'
	ences with Shall I	? Choose words from box A and box B.
	turn on make	B some sandwiches the television the light
	ts warm in this room amme isn't very good I'm hungry It's dark in this room	d. ?
	ences with Shall we .	? Choose words from box A and box B.
Į	what time where	B buy go invite meet
	have a holiday.	Okay, What time shall we meet ? Okay, ? Okay, ?

UNIT 25 can and could





He can play the piano.

can + infinitive (can do / can play / can come etc.):

positive and negative

I / we / you / they he / she / it	can can't (cannot))	do play come see
--------------------------------------	------------------------	---------------------------

(question		
	can	I / we / you / they he / she / it	do? play? come see?

- I can do something. = I know how to do it or it is possible for me to do it:
 - I can play the piano. My brother can play the piano too.
 - Ann can speak Italian but she can't speak Spanish.
 - 'Can you swim?' 'Yes, but not very well.'
 - 'Can you change twenty pounds?' 'I'm sorry I can't.'
 - Bill and Jenny can't come to the party next week.
- In the past (yesterday / last week etc.):

can (do) → could (do) can't (do) → couldn't (do)

- When I was young, I **could run** very fast.
- Before she came to Britain, she couldn't speak English. Now she can speak English very well.
- I was tired last night but I couldn't sleep.
- Bill and Jenny couldn't come to the party last week.

We use Can you ...? or Could you ...? when we ask people to do things:

- 'Can (or Could) you open the door, please?' 'Yes, sure.'
- Can (or Could) you tell me the time, please?

We use **Can I** ...? when we ask if it is okay to do something:

— 'Tom, **can I take** your umbrella?' 'Yes, of course.'

- (on the phone) Hello. Can I speak to Gary, please?

We use Can I have ...? to ask for something:

- (in a shop) Can I have these postcards, please?

ou / they

/it

io)

ings:

eone if he or she can do these things:

_		1000				
	Ē			4	5	
-		ski	play chess	drive	run ten kilometres	ride a horse
199	? 3? 5? ? 6? ?? ?					
	Dete 1	nese sentence	es. Use can or	can't + one of t	hese verbs:	
	find	hear	see	speak		
	wecan't come to your party next Saturday. because she					
	90	go	see .	sleep und	erstand	
	couldn't sleep quickly. I her. very good. He very well. esterday. I my dinner. to the concert next Saturday. He's working. to the meeting last week. He was ill.					
say in these situations? Use Can you? / Could you? / Can I?						
a lot of things. You want me to open the door for you.) Can you open the door (for me), please nner. You want me to pass the salt.)						
	turn off the radio.) Tourse. You want to use my phone.)					

UNIT 26 may and might



I may go to Paris. (= Perhaps I will go to Paris.)



UN

3 (0)

may

It **might rain.** (= Perhaps it will rain.)

may or might + infinitive (may go / might go /may play / might play etc.):

I / we / you / they he / she / it	may (not) might (not)	be go play come
y		come

may / might = it is possible that something will happen.

You can use may or might:

- I may go to the cinema this evening.

or I might go to the cinema this evening. (= perhaps 1 will go)

- 'When is Kay going to phone you?' 'I don't know. She may phone this afternoon.

- Take an umbrella with you. It might rain.

- 'Do you think Jack will come to the party?' 'I'm not sure. He may.' (= He may come.)
- 'Are you going out tonight?' 'I might.' (= I might go out.)

Study the difference:

- I'm playing tennis tomorrow, (sure)
 I may play tennis tomorrow, (possible)
- Barbara **is going** to France next week, (sure)
 Barbara **might go** to France next week, (possible)
- The negative is may not or might not:
 - I might not go to work tomorrow. (= perhaps I will not go)
 - Sue may not come to the party. (= perhaps she will not come)
- May I...? = Is it okay to do something?:
 - May I smoke? (= Is it okay if I smoke?/Can I smoke?)
 - 'May I sit here?' 'Yes, of course.'

Exercises

see Tom tomorrow) I snow today) It wear my new jeans) I es are negative. not go out tonight) I	ans. You have some ideas but you are not sure.
go away some shoe to a restau	
or I'm (not) going to I'm not going to wate I might write a letter	I'm not sure yet. I might go to Spain I don't know yet. I. I'm not sure. I haven't decided yet. true sentences about yourself. Use: or I may or I might ch television.
I might write a letter and I are shower)	

UNIT 27 must



must + infinitive (must do / must see etc.):

be w:

I / we / you / they he / she / it	must	do go stop write
--------------------------------------	------	---------------------------

- Use **must** when you think it is necessary or very important to do something:
 - The windows are very dirty. I must clean them.
 - It's a fantastic film. You must see it.
 - We **must go** to the bank today. We haven't got any money.

must is present or future:

- I must go to the bank now.
- I must go to the bank tomorrow.
- For the past (yesterday / last week etc.), we use had to + infinitive (had to go / had to do / had to write etc.):
 - I had to go to the bank yesterday. (= It was necessary for me to go to the bank.)
 - We had to walk home last night. There was no bus.
- ▶ Unit 29 have to ...
- mustn't (must not)

I mustn't do it = it is important *not* to do it, it is a bad thing to do:

- I must hurry. I mustn't be late.
- I mustn't forget to phone George.(= I must remember)
- You **mustn't walk** on the grass. (= Don't walk on the grass.)



needn't (need not)

I needn't do it = it is not necessary to do it, I don't need to do it:

- I needn't clean the windows. They aren't dirty.
- You needn't go to the bank. I can give you some money.

You can also say don't need to ... (= needn't):

- I don't need to clean the windows.
- You don't need to go to the bank.

Exercises

do / must see

must

ething:

had to go

nustn't on the uss.

to go to the tam

do go stop

WITTE

H	molete the	sentence	s. Use mu	tt + one of	f these ver	bs:		
	buy .go	go	help	hurry	learn	meet	phone	read
	exce	I have teresting page Dave last to display to display to the page of the page	enk today. en't got mu erson. You st night. I . rive. It's ve . You e food. We it post office. ery importa	ry useful. ''ve got no. ''. I need so. mt for us. V	hehim . it. thing for d me stamps	er. today. inner.	tient.	
	must	or had to.						
	ge ge we . ed hon es ai th	re very dir vere very d t up early me very late re very nice e party but how to us	ty. I lirty yestere tomorrow. hurry. We le te last night te. You It she didn' e the macl	day. I	an themcle lot to do. t much timwa re one. r long. Shes	e. it half an ho how him.	our for a tax leave early in to get the	Selicit V
	andlete the	e sentence	es. Use m ı	ustn't or n	eedn't + o	ne of these	e verbs:	
	The selection	an hui	rry lo	se st	ick ta	ke te	ll wait	
	are are	en't dirty. Y	′ou			O LOS WAY		
	e tos of	time. We	t. You umbrella.	It's not go	ing to	画画		
	yel and	but you I'll come I	ewspaper. ater. ild) You It's not po	You can h	ave			うる

UNIT 28 should



should + *infinitive* (should **do** / should **write** etc.):

I / we / you / they he / she / it	should shouldn't	do go stop write
--------------------------------------	---------------------	---------------------------

- (Someone) should do something It is a good thing to do or the right thing to do:
 - Tom **should go** to bed earlier. He usually goes to bed very late and he's always tired
 - It's a good film. You **should go** and see it.
 - When you play tennis, you **should** always **watch** the ball.
- **shouldn't** (or should not) = It's not a good thing to do or it's not the right thing to do:
 - Tom shouldn't go to bed so late.
 - You work all the time. You shouldn't work so hard.
- We often use think with should:

I think ... should ...:

- I think Carol should buy some new clothes.(= I think it's a good idea)
- It's late. I think we should go home now.
- 'Shall I buy this coat?'
 'Yes, I think you should.'

I don't think ... should ...:

- I don't think you should work so hard.(= I don't think it's a good idea)
- I don't think the police should carry guns.

Do you think ... should ...?:

- Do you think I should buy this jacket?
- What time do you think we should go home?
- 2



28

2 23

z

5

28

200

- must (▶ unit 27) is stronger than should:
 - It's a good film. You should go and see it.
 - It's a fantastic film. You must go and see it.
- Another way of saying should is ought to
 - It's a good film. You ought to go and see it. (= You should go and see it.)

Exercises

10101110

do go stop write

to do: he's always

thing to do:

k I should be

see it.)

should

	Complete the sentences. Use should + one of these verbs:
	go read visit watch wear
	When you play tennis, youshould watch
	Make sentences with shouldn't so
	smoke too much) work too hard) You eats too much) He watches.TV too often) She talk too much) You
	You ask a friend for advice. Make questions with Do you think I should?
	this jacket?) Do you think I should buy this jacket a new camera?) Do you think a new job?) Do an English course?) to drive?)
V .	Thite sentences with I think should Choose from:
2	a holiday go to university sell it go home now go to the doctor
CALL CALL	I think we should go home now. The second a change. I seem to look well. The second action is a second action of the second action is a second action.
2	ences with I don't think should Choose from:
	phone thom now go to work today get married
	ate I don't think you should phone them now. To young. I don't think
	ererybody should



I have to do something = it is necessary for me to do it, I am obliged to do it:

I / we / you / they have	to do
he / she / it has	to go to wear

- I'll be late for work tomorrow. I have to go to the dentist.
- Jill starts work at 7.00, so she has to get up at 6.00.
- You have to pass a test before you can get a driving licence.
- The past (yesterday / last week etc.) is had to ...:
 - I was late for work yesterday. I had to go to the dentist.
 - There was no bus, so we had to walk home.
- In questions and negatives we use do / does (present) and did (past):

present

do I / we / you / they I / we / you / they don't have to ...? have to. he / she / it he / she / it doesn't does past I / we / you / they) I / we / you / they didn't have to ...

have to ...? he / she / it he / she / it

- What time do you have to get up tomorrow morning?
- Does Jill have to work on Saturdays?
- Why did they have to leave the party early?
- don't have to do (something) = it is *not* necessary to do it:
 - I'm not working tomorrow, so I don't have to get up early.
 - lan doesn't have to work very hard. He's got an easy job.
 - We didn't have to wait very long. The bus soon came.
- **have to** and **must** (must **►** Unit 27)

Use must when you say what you think is necessary, when you are giving your opinion. Usually, have to is also possible:

It's a fantastic film, You must see it. (or 'You have to see it.')

Use have to (not must) when you are not giving your personal opinion:

- Jill won't be here this afternoon. She has to go to the doctor. (This is not my opinion – it is a fact.)
- In many countries, men have to do military service. (This is not my opinion it is the law in those countries.)

INIT 29

have to

ave to

Complete the sentences	. Use have to or	hat to +	one of these verbs:
------------------------	------------------	----------	---------------------

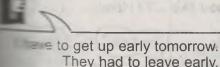
read speak travel wear

very slowly to him. a lot in his job.

mplete the sentences. Use have to or had to + one of these verbs:

buy change get go watk

questions. Some are present and some are past.



They had to leave early.

and to pay a lot of money.

have to go home now.

had to wait a long time.

has to work this evening.

What time	?
Why	?
How much you	?
Why	?
How long	~
Why	?

ences with don't / doeen't / didn't have to ...

going home now? You don't have to go home now.

Set up so e?rly? You

Set up to decide now? We

has to / had to or must.

you must (or have to) see it.

have to do military service.

Sometimes she'...... work at weekends. borrow some.

The work so hard? He

for nothing. You pay.

stop.

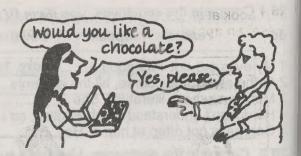
UNIT 30 Would you like ...?

Would you like ...? = Do you want ...?
We use Would you like ...? to offer things:

- 'Would you like some coffee?' 'Yes, please.'

- 'Would you like a cigarette?'
'No, thank you. I don't smoke.'

- 'What would you like, tea or coffee?''Tea, please.'



We use Would you like to ...? to invite someone:

– Would you like to come to a party?

- 'Would you like to have dinner with me on Sunday?' 'Yes, I'd love to.' (= I would love to have dinner with you.)

- Where would you like to go this evening?

I'd like (I would like) is a polite way of saying 'I want':

- (in a restaurant) I'd like fish, please.

- I'm thirsty. I'd like a drink.

- I'd like to see the film on television this evening.

Study the difference:
Would you like ...? / I'd like ...



'Would you like some tea?' = Do you want some tea? (an offer)

Do you like ...? / I like ...



'Do you like tea?' = Do you think tea is nice?

- 'Would you like to go to the cinema tonight?' (tonight)

- 'Yes, I'd love to go.'

'Do you like going to the cinema?' (in general)

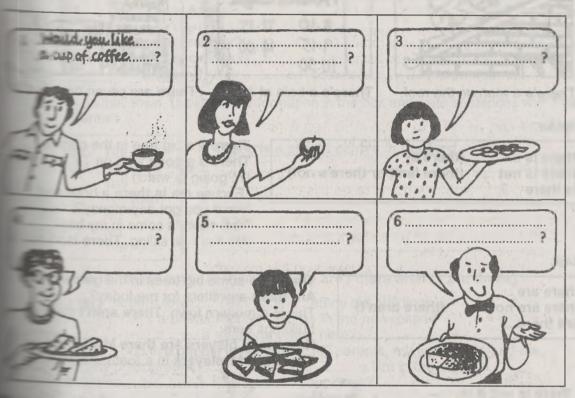
- 'Yes, 1 go to the cinema a lot.'

- I'd like an orange. (= I want an orange now.)but I like oranges. (in general)

▶ Unit 47 Do you like going ...? and Would you like to go ...?

but

the pictures. What are the people saying? Use Would you like ...? + one of apple / a biscuit / a cake / some cheese / a cup of coffee / a sandwich.



expectation to do things. Use Would you like to ...?

- to come to a party next Friday)
 - to go to a concert on Sunday) on Sunday?
 - to play tennis tomorrow)
 - eone to dance)?
- the correct form.
 - "Yes. please."
 - s right.
- ould you like a banana?' 'No, thank you.'

 ould you like bananas?' 'Yes, I love them.'

 e / would you like to drink?' 'Water, please.'

 ould you like to go out for a walk?' 'Not now. Perhaps later.'
- ine-cream but I don't eat it very often.
- I'd like to go to sleep.
 - would you like something to eat?' 'No, thanks. I'm not hungry.'

UNIT 31 there is there are



There's a man on the roof.

TRAINS 8.30 12.15 9.15 14.00 10.30

SUNDAY

There's a train at 10.30. There are seven days in a week.

31. is /

55

Si

h

d

Sign of the last

Ы

C

31.

10

24

3 E

4

5 W 高出

7 V 3_

31.

16 20

五日

50 图片

21.

51

singular:

(there's) there is ... there is not ... (there isn't or there's not) is there ?

– There's a big tree in the garden.

 There's a good falm on TV this evening. I'm going to watch it.

— Excuse me is there a hotel near here?

- 'Have you got any money?' 'Yes, there's some in my bag.'

- We can't go skiing. There isn't any snow.

plural:

there are (there aren't) there are not ... are there ...

There are some big trees in the garden.

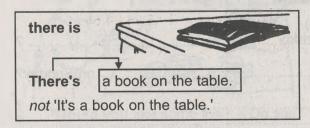
– Are there any litters for me today?

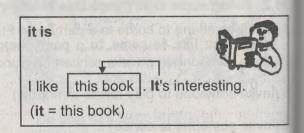
- This is a modern town. There aren't many old buildings here.

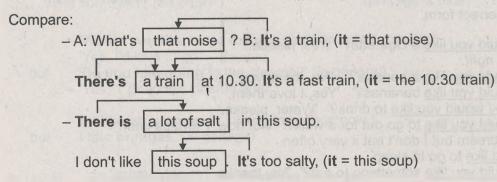
- How many players are there in a football team?

- There are 11 players in a football team.

there is and it is







Exercises UNIT 31

31.1 What's in the box? Ask questions with Is there ...? and Are there ...? 1 (any cigarettes?) Are there any cigarettes in the box? 2 (any books?) in the box? 3 (a man?)? 4 (any money?) 5 (any clothes?) 6 (a key?) days in a week 2 Dunford is a small town. Look at the information in the box and write sentences with There sn't / are / aren't ... arden. 1 There is a sports centre in Dunford. Ts centre Yes V this evening 2 in Dunford. ming-pool No iso tal Yes 3 tel near here? emas Yes (two) 4 ersity 5 No bag.' 6 - otels No e isn't any snow edra] Yes at in there is / there isn't / is there? / there are / there aren't / are there? arden. There aren't many old buildings. a photograph

sentences with There are ...

a week) the USA)

September)

there or It.

a rugby team) re solar system) me English alphabet)

=== = a photo	graph of George in the newspaper!	
==== me, a		
	le in my family: my parents, my two sisters and me.	
take any photographs.	a film in the camera.	
any students		
ean we sit?		
a bus f	rom the city centre to the airport?	
sentences with There	are Choose the right number: #9 15 26 30 50.	
■ week)	There are seven days in a week.	

There are seven days in a week

at 10.30It 's a fast train.	
to buy this shirt	's very expensive.
"s something in my	
's a car in front of the house. Is your of	
anything on TV?' 'Yes,	
's a letter on the floor. Is	for you?

i't many old football tea team.



UNIT 32 there was / were / has been / will be

there

is / are was / were

► Unit 31 was / ware ▶ Unit 11 has been / have been | has / have been ▶ Units 15-17 will ► Unit 23

there was / were



The time is now 11 o'clock. There was a train at 10.30.

but

Compare:

there is / are (present)

- There is a good film on TV this evening.
- We are staying at a very big hotel. There are 250 rooms.
- I'm hungry but there isn't anything to eat.
- Are there any letters for me this morning?

there was / were (past)

- There was a good film on TV yesterday evening.
- We stayed at a very big hotel. There were 250 rooms.
- When I arrived home, I was hungry but there wasn't anything to eat.
- Were there any letters for me yesterday morning?

there has been / there have been



There's been an accident.

- Look! There's been an accident, (there's been = there has been)
- This road is very dangerous. There have been many accidents

There was an accident last night. (not 'has been ... last night' ► Unit 19)

there will be

- Do you think there will be a lot of people at the party on Saturday?
- (from the weather forecast) Tomorrow the weather will be cold. There will be some rain in the afternoon.



mer

BV

10 T

2 Lo

5 Lo 8 W

7 WY

liho

on TV

notel.

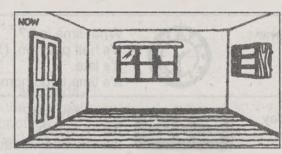
for me

ccidents

32 Exercises

The two pictures. Now the room is empty but before it was full of things. Write the things in the list. Use **There was / were ...**





some books a carpet a sofa a small table

a elock some flowers

a sola a siliali table	
■ a clock	on the wall near the window. on the floor. on the wall near the door. in the middle of the room. on the table. on the shelves. in the corner near the door. opposite the door.
there was / there wasn't / was there? / there we	ere / there weren't / were
butthere wasn't anything to eat. any letters for me yesterday? a football match on TV last night but I did at a nice hotel.' 'Did you? was empty any clothes ea et in the street but any r many people at the meeting?' 'No, very f	. a swimming-pool?' in it. noney in it.

Pere is / there are / there was / there were / there has been / there will be.

sit the museum enough time.

asn't working because any batteries in It.

alot of traffic.

3

4

33

12345678

9

OR 84 14 TO

я

it for time / day / distance / weather

time

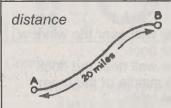


What time is it?
It's half past ten. (10.30)
It's late.
It's time to go home.

day



What day is it?
It's 16 March.
It's Thursday today.
It's my birthday today.



How far is it from London to Bristol?

It's a long way from here to the airport.

We can walk home. It isn't far.

It's 20 miles from our village to the nearest town.

★ Use far in questions (is it far?) and negatives (it isn't far). Use a long way in positive sentences (it's a long way).



It's raining. It isn't raining. Is it snowing?
It rains / snows / rained / snowed.
It's warm / hot / cold / fine / cloudy / windy / sunny / foggy / dark etc.
It's a nice day today.

Compare it and there:

It rains a lot in winter, (rains is a verb)

but There is a lot of rain in winter. (rain is a noun)

- It was very windy. (windy is an adjective)

but There was a strong wind yesterday. (wind is a noun)

there is and it Is ▶ Unit 31

it's nice to ... etc.

It's

easy / difficult / impossible / dangerous / safe / stupid / cheap / expensive / nice / good / wonderful / terrible etc.

to ...

- It 's nice

to see you again

(it = to see you again)

- It's impossible to understand her. (it = to understand her)
- It wasn't easy to find your house. (it = to find your house)
- Don't forget it:
 - It's raining again, (not 'Is raining again.')
 - Is it true that you are married? (not 'Is true that ...?)

UNIT 33 Exercises

isn't far)

ggy / dark etc.

ay).

33.1 Put in it It (it's) or It it?		
1 What timeis. if? 2It's raining again. 3 very late. We must go home 4 ' cold out?' 'Yes, put on your 5 true that Bill can fly a helicop 6 'What day today? Thu 7 about three miles from the air 8 possible for me to phone you 9 'Shall we walk to the restaurant?' 'I do 0 Jack's birthday today. Here is a pity that Ann can't cor 2 don't believe it! impos	coat.' ter? rsday?' 'No, Friday.1 rport to the city centre. u at your office? on't know. How far le's 27. me to the party on Satur	?'
3.2 Write questions with How far?		
nere / the airport?) How far it from New York / Washington?) How		Washington?
3 Putin it or there.		mention of the state of the state of
It rains a lot in winter. Inere was a strong wind yesterday. Look! 's snowing. I'e can't go skiing isn't any sr I'd rain yesterday?' 'No 's dark in this room. Can you to 's a big black cloud in the sky. was a storm last night. Did you 's a long way from here to the second strong way from here way way from here to the second strong way from here way way from here to the second strong way from here way	was fine.' urn on the light? 's going to rain. hear it? nearest shop.	
box 1 dangerous difficult impossible nice easy stupid	box 2 see you again wear understand him	meet people go out alone sleep save
ot of cities are not safe.	at night. T	, Jill. How are you? here is always a lot of noise. at night. money.

UNIT 34 go / going work / working play / playing etc.

go / work / play etc, (infinitive)
We use the infinitive (go / work / play / be etc.) after:

will	Tom will be here tomorrow.	▶ Units 23-4
shall	Shall I open the window?	▶ Units 23-4
can	I can't play tennis.	▶ Unit 25
could	Could you pass the salt, please?	▶ Unit 25
may	May I smoke?	▶ Unit 26
might	I might be late tonight.	▶ Unit 26
must	It's late. I must go now.	▶ Unit 27
should	You shouldn't work so hard.	▶ Unit 28
would	Would you like some coffee?	► Unit 30

We use the infinitive with do / does / did:

do Do you work?

does How much does it cost?

did What time did they leave?

l don't work.

She doesn't play tennis.

We didn't sleep very well.

do/does (present simple) ▶ Units 6-7

did (pest simple) ▶ Unit 10

to go / to work / to play etc. (to + infinitive)
We use to ... (to go / to work / to play / to be etc.) after:

(I'm) going (to)	I'm going to play tennis tomorrow.	
	What are you going to do?	► Unit 22
(I) have (to)	I have to go now.	Automorphic .
	Everybody has to eat.	▶ Unit 29
(1) want (to)	Do you want to go out?	
	They don't want to come with us.	▶ Unit 47
(I) would like (to)	I'd like to be rich.	
, ,	Would you like to go out?	► Unit 30

going / working / playing etc.
We use -ing with am / is / are / was / were:

am / is / are present continuous

was / were

present continuous

Dunite 3-4,21

past continuous

Unite 3-4,21

Dunite 12

- Please be quiet. I'm working.
- Tom isn't working today.
- What time are you going out?
- We didn't go out because it was raining.
- What were you doing at 11 o'clock yesterday morning?
- ► Unit 47 to... (I want to do) and -ing (I enjoy doing)

ying etc.

UNIT 34 Exercises

1 Finish each of these sentences. Write' phone Jack' or' to phono Jack'.
phone Jack. 6 I have. Im going to phone Jack. 7 You should Can you Jack? 8 I want. Shall I ? 9 I might. It like 10 You must.
2 Complete the sentences with a verb from the box. Sometimes you need the infinitive work etc.) and sometimes you need -Ing (going / working etc.).
drive / driving eat / eating get / getting go / going sten / listening rain / raining sloop / slooping stay /staying wait / waiting watch / watching wear / wearing work / working
Please be quiet. I'm .working. I feel tired. I didn'tsleep very well last night. What time do you usually up in the morning? Where are you?' To the shop.' Did you television last night? Put up your umbrella. It's The police stopped her because she was the car too fast. You can turn off the radio. I'm not to it. They didn't anything because they weren't hungry. What are you this evening?' I'm at home.' Does she always glasses?' 'No, only for reading.' My friends were for me when I arrived.
3 Put in the correct form. Choose the infinitive (go / open etc.), to + infinitive (to go / to open etc.) or -ing (going / oponing etc.).
Shall I .open. the window? (open) It's late. I haveto.go now. (go) Tom isn'tworking this week. He's on holiday, (work) Do you want out this evening? (go) Where are you for your holidays this year?' (go) We're not sure, but we may to Italy.' (go) I'm afraid I can't you. (help) It's a really good film. You must it. (see) What time do you have tomorrow morning? (leave) Do you think it will this afternoon? (rain) I'm hungry. I'm going something to eat. (have) My brother is physics at university, (study) He spoke very quietly. I couldn't him. (hear)! I'm very tired. I must down for a few minutes, (lie) I was very tired. I had down for a few minutes, (lie) Would you like out for dinner this evening? (go) You don't look well. I don't think you should out. (go)

UNIT 35 be / have / do in present and past tenses

be (am / is / are / was / were) -ing (cleaning / working / doing etc.) present continuous and past continuous

am / is / are -ing present continuous ► Units 3-4, 21

was / were -ing
past continuous

► Unit 12

Please be quiet. I'm working.

- It isn't raining at the moment.

- What are you doing this evening?

- I was working when she arrived.

- It wasn't raining, so we went out.

- What were you doing at 3 o'clock?

be (am / is / are / was / were) + past participle (cleaned / made / eaten etc.) passive

am / is / are + past participle present passive

► Unit 20

- The room **is cleaned** every day.

- I am never invited to parties.

- Oranges are imported into Britain.

was / were + past participle past passive

► Unit 20

- The room was cleaned yesterday.

- These houses were built 100 years ago.

21

31

4.

5.

35

23

- How was the window broken?

have / has + past participle (cleaned / lost / eaten / been / gone etc.)

present perfect

have / has + past participle present perfect

▶ Units 15-17

- I have cleaned my room.

- Tom has lost his passport.

- Barbara hasn't been to Canada.

- Where have they gone?

do / does / did + infinitive (clean / like / eat / go etc.)

present simple and past simple - negatives and questions

do / does + infinitive present simple negatives and questions ► Units 6-7

did + infinitive past simple negatives and questions ► Unit 10 - I like coffee but I don't like tea

- Tom doesn't smoke.

- What do you usually do at weekends?

- Does Barbara live alone?

I didn't watch TV yesterday.

- It didn't rain last week.

- What time did Barbara go out?

y. ars ago.

ends?

UNIT 35 Exercises

1 Put in is / are / do / does.			
you clean your teeth every day? here	8		
Put in am not / isn't / aren't / don't / does	sn't. All these sentences are negative.		
isn't raining at the moment. want to go out this evening. going out this evening. George working this week. My parents watch television Tom and Ann coming to the Barbara speak a foreign lan m sorry, I understand. Can ou can turn off the television. I	very often party next week. guage. n you say that again, please?		
23 Put in was / were / did / have / has.			
nerewere your shoes made? d you go out last night? nat you doing at 10.30? nere he buy his new coat? nere she born? nere you born? Chris gone home?	8 What time she go? 9 What she wearing yesterday? 10 When this road built? 11 Why they go home early? 12 How long they been married? 13 you see Jim last night? 14 you ever seen a ghost?		
Put in is / are / was / were / have / has.			
Oranges imported into Britain. Joe has lost his passport. Glass made from sand. made some coffee. Would you like some? This shopping centre built ten years ago. The streets in this town cleaned every day. you finished your work? Lall gone to Italy for a holiday. These are very old photographs. They taken a long time ago. George and Linda are here. They just arrived. Sne's Italian but she born in France. Can you tell me how this word pronounced?			

UNIT 36 Regular and irregular verbs

Past simple and past participle

The past simple and past participle of regular verbs is -ed:

clean → cleaned live → lived

paint → painted

study → studied

past simple (▶ Unit 9):

I cleaned my shoes yesterday.

Charlie studied engineering at university.

We use the past participle for the present perfect and the passive. present perfect = have / has + past participle (▶ Units 15-17):

- I have cleaned my shoes.

- Joan has lived in London for ten years.

passive = be (am / is / are / was / were) + past participle (► Unit 20):

These rooms are cleaned every day.

- My car was repaired last week.

Irregular verbs

The past simple and past participle of irregular verbs are not -ed:

	make	break	cut
past simple past participle	made made	broke broken	cut

Sometimes the past simple and past participle are the same. For example:

	make	find	buy	cut	Sec.
past simple past participle	made made	found found	bought bought	cut	100-100

I made a cake yesterday. (past simple)

I have made some coffee, (past participle – present perfect)

Butter is made from milk; (past participle – present passive)

Sometimes the past simple and past participle are different. For example:

	break	know	begin	go
past simple		knew	began	went
past participle		known	begun	gone

Somebody broke this window last night. (past simple)

- Somebody has broken this window. (past participle - present perfect)

This window was broken last night. (past participle – past passive)

► Appendix 1 Ust of irregular verds

► Appendix 2 Irregular verbs In groups

UNIT 36 Exercises

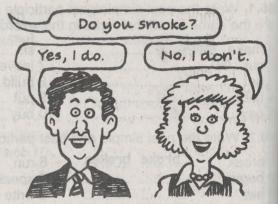
UNIT-36

The the same for all the verbs in the same for all the verbs in the ve		past simple and past participle
make made 2 cut out 3 get 4 think 5 pay	6 sit	11 hear
30.2 Write the past simple and p	past participle of these verbs.	
break broke broken begin a eat drink give 10.3 Put the verb into the right for	6 run	11 take
2 Somebody has broken 3 I feel good. I we a very good film 5 It a lot when we well 6 I've my bag. (lose) Hay George's bicycle was to bed early because Have you your book 7 These houses were Ann to drive when she is Yesterday I off my be She's a good friend of mine. I've mple or past participle.	se they were dirty. (wash) this window. (break) very well last night. (sleep) yesterday, (see) re on holiday, (rain) ave you	fall / hurt) know)
cost drive fly make	meet sell speak sw	rim tell wake
I havemade some coffee. I know Gary but I've never We were up by a loue. She jumped into the river and many different languages are our holiday a lot of many have you ever a very All the tickets for the concert will have you John about you A bird in through the our strength and the side of the concert will have you	his wife. ud noise in the middle of the ni to the other side in the Philippines. oney because we stayed in an ery fast car? were very quickly. your new job?	expensive hotel.

UNIT 37 I am / I don't etc.



She isn't tired but he is. (he is = he is tired)



11

37.

31

24

31 41 SA SN

18 211 314

基形

ST S Va

2013

20

21 38

41

51 61

80 91

ST.

He smokes but she doesn't. (she doesn't = she doesn't smoke)

do / does / did am / is / are was / were have / has would should must may might can

- We use these verbs with other verbs (am going / has seen / can't come etc.) but you can also use them alone:
 - I haven't got a car but my sister has. (= my sister has got a car)

 - 'Please help me.' 'I'm sorry, I can't.' (= I can't help you)
 'Are you tired?' 'I was, but I'm not now.' (= I was tired but I'm not tired now.)
 - 'Do you think Ann will come?' 'She might.'.(= She might come.)- 'Are you going now?' 'Yes, I'm afraid I must.' (- I must go)
- You can use these verbs in this way with Yes ... and No
 - 'Is it raining?' 'Yes, it is. / No, it isn't.'
 - 'Have you ever been to Canada?' 'Yes, I have. / No, I haven't.'
 - 'Will Alan be here tomorrow?' 'Yes, he will. / No, he won't.'
- Use do / does for the present simple:
 - I don't like hot weather but Sue does. (= Sue likes hot weather)
 - She works very hard but I don't. (= I don't work very hard)
 - 'Do you enjoy your work?' 'Yes, I do.'

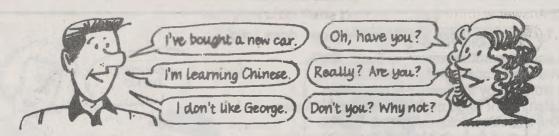
Use did for the past simple:

- 'Did you and John enjoy the film?' 'I did but John didn't.'
- (= I enjoyed it but John didn't enjoy it.)
- 'Did it rain yesterday?' 'No, it didn't.'
- You cannot use the short forms 'm / 's / 're / 've / 'Il at the end of a sentence. Use the full forms am / is / are / have / will etc.:
 - 'Are you tired?' 'Yes, I am.' (not 'Yes, I'm.')

DE TINU	UNIT 37 Exercise
o. I don't.	Complete these sentences we con't like hot weather but Sue and don't know John very well be don't enjoy the party but my frican't want to go out this evening doesn't smoke but all her frican doesn't wear glasses
pesn't. pesn't smoke)	Complete these sentences we likes hot weather but Idon to football but my brother anted to go out last night but to lives in London but her pare workers in the factory work her played tennis last weekend be
etc.) but you tired now.)	ay wasn't hungry but we were but haven't met Jack's parents can't drive but all his friends not intelligent but you
	Complete these sentences we sister can play the piano but the sister can play the piano but the sister can play the piano but the sister can play the piano but land a piece of the men was wearing a contract up early this morning but Jamends are going out tonight the sister can play the piano but the piano but the sister can play
are. Use the full	Answer these questions about the you British?

Complete these sentences with do / does	s / did.
don't like hot weather but Suedoes don't know John very well but I	······································
Complete these sentences with don't / do	esn't / didn't.
e football but my brother	manager
Complete these sentences. Use only one	verb each time (is / have / can etc.).
ay wasn't hungry but wewere bu haven't met Jack's parents but I	George
Complete these sentences with a negative	e verb (isn't / haven't / can't etc.).
sister can play the piano but I	
Answer these questions about yourself. U	se Yes, I have / No, I'm not etc.
you British? No. I'm not. e you got a car? raining? you feel well? you tired?	6 Do you like chocolate? 7 Will you be in Paris tomorrow? 8 Have you ever played tennis? 9 Did you buy anything yesterday? 10 Were you borri in Europe?
	7

UNIT 38 Have you? / Are you? / Don't you? etc.



In conversation, you can say have you? / is it? / can't he? etc. to show that you are interested or surprised. You can use these verbs in this way:

am / is / are

was / were

have / has

do / does / did

will.

2 33

5 8

38.2

ю m

12

200

×

в

- 'You're late.1 'Oh, am !? I'm sorry.'

- 'I was ill last week.' 'Were you? I didn't know that.'

- 'It's raining again.' 'Is it? It was sunny five minutes ago.'

- 'Bill can't drive.' 'Can't he? I didn't know that.'

- 'I'm not hungry.' 'Aren't you? I am.'

- 'Sue isn't at work today.' 'Isn't she? Is she ill?'

Use **do / does** for the *present simple*, did for the *past simple*:

- 'I speak four languages.' 'Do you? Which ones?'- 'Tom doesn't eat meat.' 'Doesn't he? Does he eat fish?'

- 'Linda got married last week.' 'Did she? Really?'

Question tags

You can use ... have you? / ... is it? / ... can't she? etc. at the end of a sentence. These 'endings' are question tags (= mini-questions).

A positive sentence \rightarrow a negative question tag A negative sentence → a positive question tag

Tom will be at home tomorrow,

positive → negative

It's a beautiful day, isn't it? She lives in London, doesn't she? You closed the window, didn't you? Those shoes are nice, aren't they?

Yes, it s lovely. Yes, that's right. Yes, I think so.

It's a beautiful

Yes, very nice. Yes, I think so.

negative -> positive

won't he?

That isn't your car, You don't smoke, do you? You haven't met my mother, have you? You won't be late, will you?

No, my car is white No, never. No, I haven't.



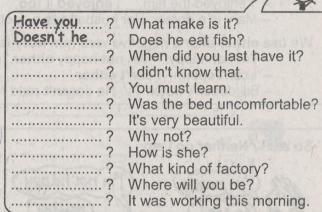
I speak four languages.
I work in a bank.
Tom phoned me last night.
Jill doesn't like me.
I didn't eat anything.
You look tired.

Do you	?	Which ones?
	?	I work in a bank too.
	?	What did he say?
	?	Why not?
	?	Weren't you hungry?
Sandard Marie Barbara	?	I don't feel tired

Answer with Have you? / Haven't you? / Did she? / Didn't she? etc.



l've bought a new car.
Tim doesn't eat meat.
I've lost my key.
Sue was born in Rome.
I can't swim.
I didn't sleep well last night.
This ring is gold.
I'm not coming with you.
I met Pam last week.
She works in a factory.
I won't be here next week.
The clock isn't working.



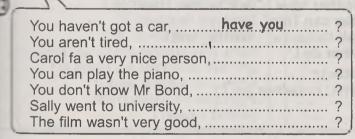
Complete these sentences with a question tag (Isn't It? / haven't you? etc.).



?
?
?
?
?
?
?

Yes, it's lovely.
Yes, they're in Portugal.
Yes, very angry.
Yes, many times.
Yes, but not often.
Yes, he works too hard.
Yes, of course I will.

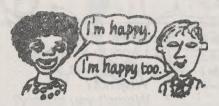
complete these sentences with a question tag, positive (is it? / do you? etc.) or negative ?? / don't you? etc.).



No, I can't drive.
No, I'm fine.
Yes, I like her very much.
Yes, but not very well.
No, I've never met him.
Yes, she studied history.
No, it was terrible.

UNIT 39 too / either so am I / neither do I etc.

too and either





We use too and either at the end of a sentence.

We use too after a positive verb:

- 'l'm happy.' 'l'm happy too.'- 'l enjoyed the film.' 'l enjoyed it too.'

- Mary is a doctor. Her husband is a doctor too.

We use either after a negative verb (am not / isn't / can't etc.):

- 'l'm not happy.' 'l'm not happy either.' (not 'l'm not happy too')- 'l can't cook.' 'l can't either.'

- Bill doesn't watch TV. He doesn't read newspapers either.

So am I / Neither do I etc.





so neither	am / is / are was / were do / does did have / has can will
	must

So am i (= I am too), So have I (= I have too) etc.:

- 'I'm tired.1 'So am I.' (not 'So I am.')

- 'I was late for work today.' 'So was John.'

- 'I work in a bank.' 'So do I.'

- 'We went to the cinema last night.' 'Did you? So did we.'

Neither am I (= I'm not either), Neither have I (= I haven't either) etc.

- 'I haven't got a key.' 'Neither have I.' (not 'Neither I have.1)

- 'Ann can't cook.' 'Neither can Tom.'

- 'I won't (= will not) be here tomorrow.' 'Neither will !.'

- 'I never eat meat.' 'Neither do I.'

You can also use Nor ... (= Neither):

- 'I'm not married.' 'Nor am I.' (= Neither am I.)

am/was/do etc. ► Unit 37

I need a holiday.

.....

UNIT 40 Negatives: isn't / haven't / don't etc.

1 m 2 Hr 3 Tr 4 rv 5 m 6 l c

40.2 1 He 2 Do 3 I W

SLO

40.3

250

Fie

10 W

12 W

M W

IS W

We use **not** (n't) in negative sentences:

2100	am not ('m not)	I'm not tired.
am		
is	is not (isn't or 's not)	It isn't (or It's not) raining.
are	are not (aren't or 're not)	They aren't (or They're not) her
was	was not (wasn't)	Jack wasn't hungry.
were	were not (weren't)	The shops weren't open.
have	have not (haven't)	I haven't finished my work.
has	has not (hasn't)	Sue hasn't got a car.
will	will not (won't)	They won't be here tomorrow.
would	would not (wouldn't)	I wouldn't like to be an actor.
can	cannot (can't)	George can't drive.
could	could not (couldn't)	I couldn't sleep last night.
should	should not (shouldn't)	You shouldn't work so hard.

■ Present simple negative (► Unit 6):

I / we / you / they do not (don't) he / she / it does not (doesn't) + infinitive (work / live / go etc.)

Past simple negative (► Unit 10):

I / they / he / she etc. did not (didn't) + infinitive

```
positive → negative

I smoke. → I don't smoke.

They work hard. → They don't work hard.

Tom plays the guitar. → Tom doesn't play the guitar.

She likes her job. → She doesn't like her job.

I got up early. → I didn't get up early.

We worked hard. → We didn't work hard.

They saw the film. → They didn't see the film.

She had a bath. → She didn't have a bath.
```

■ The negative of 'Look!', 'Go away!' etc. is 'Don't ...!':

Look! → Don't look! Go away! → Don't go away!

■ Do can also be the main verb (don't do / didn't do etc.):

positive → negative

Do it. → Don't do it.

He does a lot of work. → He doesn't do much work.

I did the examination. → I didn't do the examination

Make these sentences negative.

Fred I'm not tired.

Be s got a car. He hasn't got a car. 7 We were late. 8 I'm going out. are married. 9 She has gone out. ■ Pad dinner. 10 I'll be late tonight. sold today..... 11 It was expensive. see you..... 12 You should go..... Wake negatives with don't / doesn't / didn't. saw me. He didn't see me. 7 They understood. Don't do it. 8 Phone me tonight. ™e fish. 9 I did the shopping..... = smokes..... 10 He lives near here. at me! 11 It rained yesterday. oct up early..... 12 They did the work. Make these sentences negative. 8 We watched TV. It Isn't raining. saw the film She didn't see the film. 9 They were angry. ⇒ can swim. 10 He'll be pleased..... ey're on holiday. 11 I went to the bank. speaks German. 12 She's got a camera..... enjoyed the film. 13 Open the door. important..... 14 I could hear them..... Complete these sentences with a negative verb (isn't / haven't / don't etc.). The sun is shining. Itisn.t... raining. see isn't rich. She .hasn't got much money. Would you like something to eat?' 'No, thank you. I hungry.' - hear you. Please speak louder. Seorge write letters very often. He prefers to phone. on't like this book. It very interesting.

Where is Jill?' 'I know. I seen her today.'

She be here tomorrow. She's going away. Who broke that window?' 'Not me! I do it.'

e take an umbrella with us because the weather was fine. we been to Spain many times but I been to Portugal.

The box was too heavy. We tried to lift it but we

■ We didn't see what happened. We looking at the time.

when we were in London, we stayed with friends. We stay at a hotel.

Be careful! fall!

She go to work yesterday because she very well, but she's better today.

UNIT 41

Questions (1): is it...? have you ...? do they ...? etc.

positive you are eating.

question are you eating? What are you eating?

■ In questions, the first verb (is / are / have etc.) is before the subject:

positive	-		question		
subject	+ verb			verb +	subject
1	am late.	\rightarrow		Am	I late?
That seat	is free.	\rightarrow		Is	that seat free?
She	was angry.	\rightarrow	Why	was	she angry?
David	has gone.	→	Where	has	David gone?
You	have got a car.	\rightarrow		Have	you got a car?
They	will be here.	\rightarrow	When	will	they be here?
Tom	can swim.	\rightarrow		Can	Tom swim?

■ Be careful with word order: the subject is after the first verb:

- Where has David gone? (not 'Where has gone David?')

- Why are those people waiting? (not 'Why are waiting those people?')

Present simple questions: do (I / we / you / they) } + infinitive (work / live / go etc. does (he / she / it) } +

Past simple questions:

did (you / they / she etc.) + infinitive

(► Unit 10)

positive			question		
You	smoke.	\rightarrow		Do you	smoke?
They	live in London.	\rightarrow	Where	do they	live?
Jack	smokes.	\rightarrow		Does Jack	smoke?
She	gets up early.	\rightarrow	What time	does she	get up?
They	worked hard.	>		Did they	work hard?
You	had dinner.	\rightarrow	What	did you	have for dinner?
She	got up early.	\rightarrow	What time	did she	get up?

Do can also be the main verb (do you do / did she do etc.):

- What do you usually do at weekends?

- 'What does your sister do?' 'She works in a bank.'

- 'I broke my leg ' 'How did you do that?' (not 'How did you that?')

■ Negative questions with Why ...? (Why isn't ...? / Why don't ...? etc.): Be careful with word order in these questions:

- Where's John? Why isn't he here? (not 'Why he isn't here?')

- Why can't Paula come to the meeting? (not 'Why Paula can't ...')

- Why didn't you phone me last night?

▶ Units 42–3 Questions (2–3)

ople?')

hard?

or dinner?

rk / live / go 📾

Tite questions.

swim.	(and you?)	Can you swim	?
moke.	(and Jim?)	Does Jim smoke	?
late this morning.	(and you?)	***************************************	?
∈ got a key.	(and Ann?)		?
be here tomorrow.	(and you?)		?
going out this evening.	(and Tom?)	***************************************	?
finished my work.	(and you?)		?
™e my job.	(and you?)		?
he near the city centre.	(and Pam?)		?
oyed my holiday.	(and you?)		?
a shower this morning.	(and you?)		?

You are asking somebody questions. Write the full questions.



tired?) Are you tired	?
play the piano?)	
married?)	
(live in a city?)	
been to India?)	
go out last night?)	
(like chocolate?)	
watch TV yesterday?)	
sleep well last night?)	

Yes, a little. Yes, but not very well. No, I'm single. No, in a small village. No, never. No, I stayed at home. Yes, I love it. No, I never watch TV. No, not very well.

Ask questions.

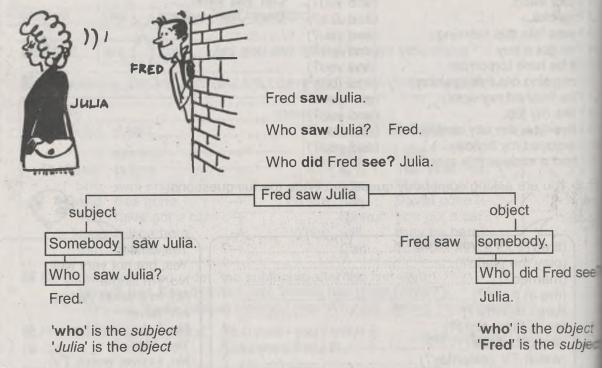


в

I want to go. They aren't here. It's important. I'm reading. Jan went home. Dave and Mary are going away. I like music. I met Tim. He is going to stay here. The children have gone. I can't come to the party. I broke the window. I need some money. She did her driving test. I don't like her. It rains a lot.

and the second second second second		
Where do you want to go	10 8 GE	?
Why aren't they here		?
Why	************	?
What you		?
What time		?
When		?
What kind of music	,	?
Where		?
How long		?
vvnere		!
Why		?
How		?
How much money		
When		
Why		?
How often		?

UNIT 42 Questions (2): Who saw you? Who did you see?



- In these questions who or what is the subject:
 - Who lives in that house? (= Somebody lives there who?) (not 'Who does live ...?')
 - What happened? (= Something happened what?) (not 'What did happen?')
 - What's (= What is) burning?
 - Who's got (= Who has got) my key?
- In these questions who or what is the object:
 - Who did you meet yesterday? (= You met somebody who?)
 - What did she say? (= She said something what?)
 - Who are you phoning?
 - What was he wearing?

Compare:

- George likes eggs. → Who likes eggs? George.
 - What does George like? Eggs.
- Jill won some money? Jill.
 - What did Jill win? Some money.
- Use who for people (somebody), what for things, ideas etc. (something):
 - Who is your favourite singer?
 - What is your favourite song?

Somebody broke the window. Something happened. Somebody is coming. Somebody took my umbrella. Something made me angry. Somebody wants to see you. Somebody told me about the accident. Something went wrong.

Who broke the window What happened	?
Who	?
•••••	
•••••	
	me?
you	?
***************************************	?

Make questions with who and what. In these sentences who / what is the object.

lake questions with who and what. In these sentences who / what is the subject

object mebody.

did Fred see /ho

tho' is the object red' is the subjet

I met somebody.
I'm doing something.
I'm reading something.
I saw somebody.
I want something.
I phoned somebody.
going to cook something.
I bought something.

	11 2
Who did you meet	?
What are you doing	?
Whatyou	?
Who	?
	?
	2
	7
***************************************	(

Make questions with who and what. Sometimes who / what is the subject, sometimes what is the object.



Im

Somebody lives in that house. Tom said something. They have lost something. Somebody cleaned the kitchen. I asked somebody for money. Somebody asked me for money. Something happened last night. Jack bought something. Somebody telephoned me yesterday. I telephoned somebody yesterday. Somebody knows the answer. Something woke me up this morning. Somebody has got my pen. Tom and Ann'saw something. Somebody saw the accident. Somebody did the washing-up. Jill did something. This word means something.

		-6	
	Lives in that house		?
What	did Tom say		?
What			?
Who	***************************************		?
	you		?
			?
			?
			?-
	***************************************		?
	***************************************		?
	***************************************		?
	***************************************		?
	***************************************		?
			?
			<u>'</u>
			?
	2		?
vviiat			1

UNIT 43

Questions (3): Who is she talking to? What is it like?

UN

12345678

9 10

11

16

43.2

TI (tibe 2 876 3 (5)

= (19h) 5 (yo 6 (th

7 (5) 8 (T

43.3

W

2 Yo

3 Yo



Julia is talking

to someone

Who?

Who is Julia talking to?

Questions (Who ...? / What ...? / Where ...? / Which ...?) often end with a preposition (to / for / about / with etc.):

- 'I'm thinking.' 'What are you thinking about?'- 'I'm afraid.' "Why? What are you afraid of?'

- 'Where is your friend from?' 'She's from Germany.'

- 'Who does this book belong to?' 'It's mine.'

- 'Who did she go on holiday with?' 'With her parents.'
- 'What does he look like?' 'He's got a beard and wears glasses.'
- This book is very good.' 'Is it? What is it about?'

- 'Tom's father is in hospital.' 'Which hospital is he in?'

What (is / are / was / were) ... like?



'What is it like?' = Tell me something about it; is it good or bad, big or small, old or

When we say 'What ... like?', like is a preposition. It is not the verb like (Do you like music? etc.).

- A: I went to the new restaurant last night.
 - B: Oh, did you? What's it like? Good?
 - A: Yes, excellent.
- A: What's your new teacher like?
- B: She's very good. We learn a lot.
- A: I met Linda's parents yesterday.
 - B: Oh, what are they like?
- A: They're very friendly.
- A: What was the weather like when you were on holiday?
 - B: Very nice.

osition

, old or

you like



3

5

8

9

10

11

12

13

54

15

16

Z ESONIA TO THE PARTY OF THE PA

I'm thinking about something. He went out with somebody. I'm waiting for somebody. She danced with somebody. He's interested in something. I had dinner with somebody. They're looking for something. George was with somebody. I gave the money to somebody. I'm looking at something. They were talking about something. I dreamt about somebody. He was afraid of something. They're going to a restaurant. She spoke to somebody. I stayed at a hotel.

What are you thinking.	about ?
Who did he go out wit	
Who are you	?
Who did she	?
What	
Who	?
What	
Who	
Who	
What	
What	?
Who	
What	
Which restaurant	
Who	
Which hotel	?

You are talking to somebody from another country. You want some information about the try. Ask questions with **What is / are ... like?**

	Te houses)	What are the houses like	?
2	re food)	What	?
ì	Te weather)		?
2	Te people)		?
9	cour city)		?
	e shops)		?
	e schools)		?
5	programmes)		!
0	Ask questions with What	at was / were like?	
	friend has just come to hat was the weather i	back from holiday. Ask about the weather.	?
		pack from the cinema. Ask about the film.	
	& nat		?
۰	friend has just arrived	l at the airport. Ask about the flight.	
			?
۱	friend has just been to	o a concert. Ask about the concert.	_
	friend has just finish a	d an Emplish accorded Advantage of the Language	?
	mend has just linished	d an English course. Ask about the lessons.	2
	friend has just come h	back from holiday. Ask about the hotel.	-
	mena has just come t	back from Hollday. Ask about the Hotel.	2

UNIT 44 What...? Which ...? How...?

■ What ...?

What + noun (What colour ...? / What kind ...? etc.):

What colour is your car?What size is this shirt?

– What make is your TV set?

What colour are your eyes? What kind of job do you want?

123

4

What time is it?

What without a noun:

- What's your favourite colour?

- What do you want to do this evening?

What and Who ▶ Unit 42

■ Which ...?

Which + noun (things or people):

- Which train did you catch - the 9.50 or the 10.30?

- Which doctor did you see - Doctor Ellis, Doctor Gray or Doctor Hill?

Which without a noun (not people):

- Which is bigger - Canada or Australia?

Who is taller - Bill or Jerry? (Who for people)

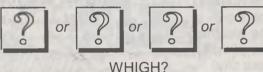
Which one(s) ► Unit 69

What ...? and Which ...?

We say Which when we are thinking about a small number (perhaps two, three or four things):

 We can go this way or that way. Which way shall we go?

- There are four umbrellas here. Which is yours?



Use What in other situations:

- What is the capital of Italy?

- What sort of music do you like? (not 'Which sort ...?')

Compare:

but

What colour are your eyes? (not 'Which colour ...?') Which colour do you prefer, pink or yellow?

How ...?

- 'How was the party last night?' 'It was great!'

- 'How do you usually go to work?' 'By bus.'

How + adjective / adverb (how old / how big / how fast etc.):

- How old is your father? How tall are you? How big is the house?

- How far is it to the shops from here?

- How often do you go on holiday?

e or four

	4.1	Write	questions	with	Which.
--	-----	-------	-----------	------	--------

He stayed at a hotel. We're going to a restaurant. She reads a newspaper. I'm going to learn a language. They visited many places. I'm waiting for a bus.

Which hotel did he stay at	?
	to?
	?
	?
	?
	?

- 2 Put in what / which / who. What.... is that man's name?

Which... way shall we go? This way or the other way? You can have tea or coffee do you want? - can't find my umbrella.' '..... colour is it?' is your favourite sport? This is a very nice house. room is yours?

is more expensive, meat or fish? is older, Ann or George?

is your telephone number?

She's got three cars.' '...... car does she use most?'

are you?' 'I'm Brazilian.'

3 Write questions with What ...? or How ...?

Are his eyes blue? Green? Brown? What colour are his eyes	?
2 Did you get up at 7 o'clock? 7.30? 8.15?	?
Is the door red? Blue? Yellow?	. ?
Are these shoes size 37? 38? 39?	

s your room very big? Quite big? Not very big?..... Do you like classical music? Rock? Folk music?

	2
Can you run one kilometre? Five? Ten?	?
s your pullover size 38? 40? 42?	?
2 Are you 1.75 metres? 1.80? 1.85?	?
s it Monday? Tuesday? Wednesday?	?
s this box one kilogram? One and a half? Two?	?
Can this plane fly at 500 miles an hour? 600? 700?	
	?

Do you like horror films? Science fiction films? Thrillers? Comedies?

UNIT 45 How long does it take?



How long does it take by plane from London to Madrid?

It takes two hours.



7 (

45.3

1 5

211

3 T

411 5 H 45.

20 3/1 4 (8 5 W 45.5

T (nu

2 (h: 3 (5)

(st

5 lws

I started reading the book two weeks ago. I finished it today.

It took me two weeks to read it.

How long does it take		by plane by train by car	from to?
It takes	two hours ten minutes a long time	by plane by train by car	from to

- How long does it take by train from London to Manchester? It takes two hours by train from London to Manchester.
- How long does it take by car from your house to the station? It takes ten minutes by car from my house to the station.

How long d		did doe will	16 6641	ke	(you) (Ann) (them)	to (do something)?
lt	took takes will tak	ке	(me) (Ann) (them)	long	eek a time e hours	to (do something).

- How long does it take to cross the Atlantic Ocean by ship?
- How long will it take me to learn to drive?
- 'I came by train.' 'Did you? How long did it take?'
 Did it take you a long time to find a job?
 It takes a long time to learn a language.

- It takes me 20 minutes to get to work in the morning.
- It took Tom an hour to do his shopping.
- It will take me an hour to cook the dinner.
- It doesn't take long to cook an omelette.

UNIT 45 Exercises



c two oday. read it.

	/ Madrid).	How long	does it take by plane from London to Madrid?
by car / Rome / Milby bus / the city ce	lan) entre / the a	airport)	?
by plane / Cairo / L by taxi / the station by train / Paris / Go by boat / Dover / C	ondon) ondon) on / the hote eneva) Ostend)	l) r work)	? ? ? ? ?
45.2 Look at the time interest with		ights from	London. How long does it take to get to each place?
from LONDON DEDINBURGH MANCHESTER NEWCASTLE CORK ABERDEEN BELFAST	depart 07.10 07.15 07.30 11.15 09.25 08.30	arrive 08.20 08.05 08.30 12.30 10.50 09.40	How long does it take to fly to: 1 Edinburgh? It takes an hour and ten minute: 2 Manchester? It 3 Newcastle? 4 Cork? 5 Aberdeen? 6 Belfast?
45.3 Write Questions	s with How	long did	It take 2
walked to the statiThey cleaned the hearnt to swim	on ouse		you ?
45.4 Write sentence			
we walked homelearnt to drive / athey repaired the	/ an hour) a long time car' / all da) ıy)	ok him two weeks to read the book.
			nese things? Write full sentences.
oun five kilometres	?) It take	es me abo	out 30 minutes to run five kilometres.
a nave a shower?)	your coun	try?)	
study to be a docto	or in your o	country?)	
alk from your hou	use to the	nearest s	hop?)

UNIT 46 Can you tell me where ...? Do you know what...? etc.



We say: Where is the station?

but

Can you tell me where the station is?

(not 'Can you tell me where is the station is ?') also:

I know
I don't know
Do you know
I can't remember
I wonder
(etc.)

where the station is (?)

21

31

234

5 6

46

11

31

4 (

46

234567

Who are those people?
Where have they gone?
How old is Tom?
What time is the bus?
When is Ann going away?
How much is this camera?
Why were they late?
What was he wearing?

Do you know I don't know I know Can you tell me I can't remember who those people are
where they've gone
how old Tom is (?)
what time the bus is
when Ann is going away (?)
how much this camera is
why they were late
what he was wearing

Questions with **do** / **does** / **did** (present simple and past simple):

Where

but

Do you know where

does he live ?

(not 'Do you know where does he live?')

How do aeroplanes fly? What does she want? Why did she go home? Where did I put the key? Do you know
I don't know
I know
I can't remember

how aeroplanes fly what she wants why she went home where I put the key

Questions beginning Is ...? / Do ...? / Can ...? etc. (yes / no questions):

Is Jack at home?
Have they got a car?
Can he help us?
Does Ann smoke?
Did anybody see you?

but .

Do you know I don't know if or whether Jack is at home they've got a car he can help us Ann smokes anybody saw me

(?)

You can use if or whether in these sentences:

– Do you know if she smokes? or Do you know whether she smokes?

UNIT 46 Exercises

tation?

is ?

tation is ?')

tation is (?)

ple are gone

ous is oing away (?) camera is late rearing

oes he live?')

es fly

home e key

at home

nokes?

got a car (?) help us okes y saw me

(?)

46.1 You are a tourist. Ask Excuse m	The state of the s
the information centre)	tell me where the station is
65 2 Answer these questions with I do	on't know where / when / why etc.
a	£
63	7
Have they gone to London	? (where) I don't know where they've gone.
Is he in the garde Are they leaving tomorro Was he angry because I was lat Are they from Austral Is the house very of Will he be here soo	w? (when) when her te? (why) I don't know her where) I how old) how old)
Write sentences with Do you kn	
-ow do aeroplanes fly?) here does Susan work?) here do they live?) hat did he say?) hat time does the concert begin? hy did they leave early?) wow did the accident happen?)	Do you know how aeroplanes fly I don't know Do you know Do you remember Do you know I don't know I don't remember
Ask questions with Do you know	w if (or whether)?
-re they married?) Do you know. Does she like her job?) Do you kn George be here tomorrow?) D	w if they've got a car
Write new questions beginning I	Do you know?
nat does she want?) nere is Ann?) Pat working today?) nat time do they start work?) they work on Sundays?) ny were they so nervous?) nere did Stella go?) the shops open tomorrow?)	Do you know what she wants Do you know where Do you Do
The specific	

UNIT 47 to ... (I want to do) and -ing (I enjoy doing)

verbs + to ... (I want to do)

want decide hope try
need offer expect forget
plan refuse promise learn

+ to ... (to do / to work / to be etc.)

- What do you want to do this evening?
- I hope to go to university next year.
- We have **decided to leave** tomorrow morning.
- You forgot to switch off the light when you went out.
- My brother is learning to drive.
- I tried to work but I was too tired.

verbs + -ing (I like doing)

like love suggest stop enjoy hate mind finish

+ -ing (doing / working / being etc.)

- I enjoy dancing. (not 'enjoy to dance')
- Do you like driving?
- I hate getting up in the morning.
- Ann loves going to the cinema.
- Has it **stopped** raining?
- Mary suggested going to the cinema.
- I don't mind being alone.



1: 1: 1: 1: 1: 1: 1:

11

15

1234

5

Di

107

10 00

10

47

but:

would like would hate would love would prefer

+ to ... (to do / to work / to be etc.)

- Jan would like to meet you. (not 'would like meeting')
- I'd love to go to Australia. (I'd = I would)
- 'Would you like to sit down?' 'No, I'd prefer to stand, thank you.'
- I wouldn't like to be a teacher.

would like ► Unit 30

verbs + to ... or -ing:

start continue begin prefer

to ... (to do etc)
or -ing (doing etc.)

- It started raining. or It started to rain.
- I prefer travelling by car. or I prefer to travel by car.
 (but would prefer to do something)

UNIT 47 Exercises

6 Have you finished	(go)? (do)? (val)? (lak) (lak).
often travel by train. D	0 you like?
o you like doing these things?	Use I like / don't like / hate / don't mind
8	ly(or I like / I don't like / I hate) letters train
3 Put the verb in the right for	orm, to or -ing.
What would you like	(drive)? e (live) here?



UNIT 48 I want you to ... / I told you to ...



The woman wants to go.

The man doesn't want the woman to go. He wants her to stay.

48

31

46

5(

511

48.

21

37

58

48.

arri wai

23

4 5

\$

71

10.00

(I) want to ...

(I) want (somebody) to ...

■ We say I want (you) to ...:

- I want you to be happy. (not 'I want that you are happy.')
- They didn't want anybody to know their secret.

We also use this structure (verb + somebody + to ...) with:

tell
ask
advise
persuade
expect
teach

l	told	you	to be	careful.
She	asked	her friend	to help	her.
	advise persuaded expect taught	me George you my brother	to do? to come to be to swim.	with us. here.

■ I told (somebody) to ... / I told (somebody) not to ...:







- Tom said (to Ann): 'Wait for me!'→ Tom told Ann to wait for him.
- Tom said (to Ann): 'Don't wait for me.'
 → Tom told Ann not to wait for him.

make and let

After make and let we do not use to:

- He's very funny. He makes us laugh. (not 'makes us to laugh')
- I don't want you to go alone. Let me go with you. (not 'Let me to go')

Let's (do something)

You can say **Let's** ... (= **let us**) when you want people to do things with you:

- Come on! Let's dance!
- 'Shall we go out tonight?1 'No, I'm tired. Let's stay at home.'

help

You can say **help** somebody **do** or **help** somebody **to do**:

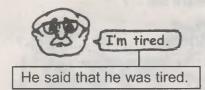
- Tom helped me carry the box. or Tom helped me to carry the box.

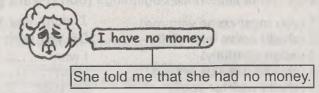
UNIT 48 Exercises

to go.

48.1 Write sentences beginning I (you must come with me) 2 (shall I come with you?) 3 (listen carefully) 4 (please don't be angry) 5 (shall I wait for you?) 6 (don't phone me tonight) 7 (you must meet Sarah) 8 (shall I make some coffee?)	(don't) want you / Do you want me? I want you to come with me. Do you with me to come with you. ? ! want ! don't ! Do you ?
48.2 Write sentences with advlse	A STATE OF THE PARTY AND A STATE OF THE PARTY
 1 stayed in bed / the doctor adv (she phoned me / I asked her) I went to the party / Tom persual I used their phone / they let me) 	uaded him) We persuaded George to come with us. ised me) The doctor ded me) Tom They er taught her) Ann's
48.3 Write sentences with told.	Territori basi (1971) puribisi 14-
	ey.' She
arrive etc.) and sometimes to is	
arrive clean cry do e	xplain go get hear know sleep
Don't wake me up tomorrow mo Talk quietly. I don't want anyboo Do you want to go by car?' 'N You're here early. I expected you It was a very sad film. It made n Please don't tell Sarah about m The kitchen is very dirty. Can you Shall we begin?' 'No, let's	married. g so she asked me it to her. grning. Let me it to her. grning.

UNIT 49 He said that ... / He told me that...





After said that / told (somebody) that ... a verb is usually past:

am / is → was	(she said) ' I'm working.' → She said that she was working.
e shifte arise of the	(they said to us) 'The hotel isn't very good.' → They told us that the hotel wasn't very good.
are → were	(I said) 'The shops are open.' → I said that the shops were open.
have / has → had	(I said to him) 'I've finished my work.' → I told him that I had finished my work.
can → could	(Tom said) 'I can't come to the party.' → Tom said that he couldn't come to the party.
will → would	(my friends said to me) 'The exam will be easy.' → My friends told me that the exam would be easy.
do / does → did	(I said) 'It doesn't matter.' → I said that it didn't matter. (he said) 'I don't know your address.' → He said that he didn't know my address.
like → liked	(Mary said) 'I like tomatoes.' → Mary said that she liked tomatoes.
go → went (etc.)	(they said) 'We often go to the cinema.' → They said that they often went to the cinema.

say (\rightarrow said) and tell (\rightarrow told)

say something (to somebody): They said that ... (not 'They said me that ...') tell somebody something: They told me that ... / They told Ann that ...

- He said that he was tired. (not 'He said me that he was tired.')

but He **told me** that he was tired. (not 'He told that he was tired.')

What did he say to you? (nor 'say you')
 What did he tell you? (nor 'tell to you')

■ 'that' is not necessary in these sentences. You can say:

- He said that he was tired. or He said he was tired, (without 'that')

hat')

no money.

UNIT 50 I went to the shop to buy ...

Ann didn't have any bread. But she wanted some bread. So she went to the shop.

Why did she go to the shop? To buy some bread.

She went to the shop to buy some bread.



50 ge ge

21

3 (

4 (5 (1

to

ton to s

tos

2! 31

61

71

91 10 T

50.3

2 V

311

5 H

611

9 E

TO TH

50.4

11 ca 2 We

3 We

4 Isa

- to ... (to do / to buy / to see etc.) telb us why a person does something (the purpose):
 - 'Why are you going out?' 'To buy a newspaper.'
 George went to the station to meet his friend.
 She turned on the TV to watch the news.
 I'd like to go to Spain to learn Spanish.

money / time to (do something):

- We need some money to buy food.
- I haven't got time to watch television.

to ... and for ...:

to + verb: to buy / to have / to see etc.

for + noun: for some bread / for dinner / for a holiday etc.

- She went to the shop to buy some bread. (to + verb)
- She went to the shop **for some bread**. (**for** + *noun*) but
 - They are going to Scotland to see their grandmother, (not 'for to see')
- They are going to Scotland for a holiday.
 - We need some money to buy food, (not 'for buy')
- We need some money for food. but

wait

wait for somebody / something:

- Are you waiting for the bus?
- Please wait for me.

wait for somebody / something to ...:

- I can't go out yet. I'm waiting for John to phone.
- I was having dinner when they arrived. They waited for me to finish my meal.

enough / too + to ... Units 85-6

UNIT 50 Exercises

get some medicine get some stamps	meet a friend eatch a train-	buy some food
the station) the bank) the supermarket) the post office) the chemist) the cafe)	I went to the station to catch a train. I went	
50.2 Finish the senter	ices with the best ending. Choose from:	
open this door watch the news see the Pyramids see who it was	to let some fresh air into the room to tell him about the party to read the newspaper	to wake them up to get some petrol to clean it
Do I need a key The house is dirty be she opened the wind like the wind like the stopped at a period of people go to show the shoned Tom	armchair out they don't have time ndow pedroom door etrol station D Egypt so I looked out of the window	?
Put in to or for.	Tradulation was able to the first first	THE STREET
m going to walk he went to a restance wants to go to use going to Londor got up late this most arrows.	opto buy some bread. etrol station some petrol. ome. I haven't got any money a talurant have dinner. niversity study economics. on an interview next week. on visit a friend of mine. orning. I didn't have time wash. onney live. mall. There's space only	
Finish these con	tences. Use the words in brackets ().	The second
	The state of the s	(
e re not going out called the police	waiting for John to phone. yet. We're waiting and then we waited	(the rain/stop) (them/come)

y meal.

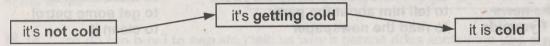
irpose):

UNIT 51 get

get something / somebody = receive / buy / fetch / find

you don't have it you get it you have it

- Did you get my letter last week? (= receive)
- I like your pullover. Where did you get it? (= buy)
- (on the phone) 'Hello, can I speak to Ann, please?' 'One moment. I'll get her.' (= fetch)
- is it difficult to get a job in your country? (= find)
- get cold / hungry / tired / better etc. (get + adjective) = become



- Drink your coffee. It's getting cold.
- If you don't eat, you get hungry.
- I'm sorry he's ill. I hope he gets better soon.

also: get married and get lost:

- Linda and Frank are getting married next month.
- I went for a walk and **got lost**. (= I lost my way)

get to a place (get to work / get to London / get home etc.) = arrive

- I usually **get to work** before 8.30. (= *arrive at work*)
- We went to Oxford yesterday. We left London at 8.00 and got to Oxford at 9.00.
- Can you tell me how to get to the city centre?

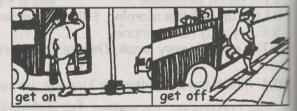
but get home (nor 'get to home'):

– What time did you get home last night?

gti in / out / on / off get in (a car) get out (of a car)



get on get off (a bus, a train, a plane)



SO

2 V

30

4 V

54

61

7 V

51.

dar

1 D

211

377

4 V 5 Tu

51.3

lice

11 15

28

3 Da

435

5 W

51.4

91.5

ISh

Ell:

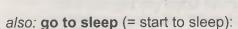
- She got in the car and drove away. (you can also say 'got into the car')
- A car stopped and a man got out. (but 'got out of the car')
- They got on the bus outside the hotel and got off in Cross Street.

UNIT 51 Exercises

Finish these sentences. Use get(e) + the best ending.
some petrol a very good salary
rote to you last week. Did you get my letter ? We stopped at the petrol station to Quick! This mah is ill. We must ? They're very nice. There did you ? They're very nice. They you going to the concert?' 'Yes, if I can 'Ad an interview with the manager but I didn't ! Then you go to the shop, can you ? She's got a good job. She
Complete these sentences. Use getting + one of these words:
It's time to go home. next week.' 'Oh, are you? Congratulations!' no on the light. It's It's time to go home. next week.' 'Oh, are you? Congratulations!' to go out.'
Complete the sentences. Use get / got + one of these words:
old _bungry married better wet lost
ou don't eat, you
me / 7.30 work / 8.15). I left home at 7.30 and got to work at 8.15 . and on / 10.15 Bristol / 11.45) I left London at 10.15 and
me / 8.30 the airport / 9.30) I left home
party / 11.15 home / midnight) I
got in got + in / out (of) / on / off. got in the car and drove away. the bus and walked to my house from the bus-stop. the car, shut the door and went into a shop. de a stupid mistake. I

UNIT 52 go

- go to ... (go to London / go to work / go to a concert etc.)
 - I'm going to France next week.
 - What time do you usually go to work?
 - Tom didn't want to go to the concert.
 - I went to the dentist on Friday.
 - What time did you go to bed last night?



- I went to bed and went to sleep very quickly.

go home (without to):

- I'm going home now. (not 'going to home')
- go on holiday / a trip / an excursion / a cruise
 - We go on holiday (to Scotland) every year.
 - When we were on holiday, we went on a lot of excursions to different places.
 - Schoolchildren often go away on school trips.
- go for a walk / a run / a swim / a drink / a meal / a holiday
 - The sea looks nice. Let's go for a swim.
 - Last night we went out for a meal. The restaurant was very good.
 - 'Where's Ann?' 'She's gone for a walk in the park.'
 - They've gone to Scotland for a holiday.
 (We say 'on holiday' but 'for a holiday')
- go swimming / go shopping etc.

We use **go -ing** for sporting activities (**go swimming / go skiing / go jogging / go fishing** etc.) and also **shopping** (**go shopping**):

he is going we went they have gone she wants to go

shopping swimming fishing sailing skiing etc.



52.

2

3

4

5.

61

81

9 101

11 I 12 I 13 (

14 :

52.;

with

Little Hand La Land

16

52.3

Since

2 G

31v

475

5 H

7/1

- We live n"ar the mountains. In winter we go skiing every weekend.
- She has a small boat and she often goes sailing.
- Are you going shopping this afternoon?
- It's a nice day. Let's go swimming. (or Let's go for a swim.)
- George went fishing last Sunday. He caught a lot of fish.

UNIT 52 Exercises

m going skiing

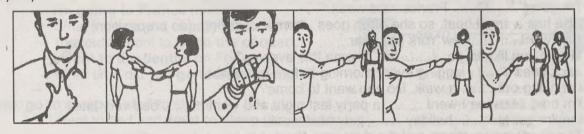
	re France neall boat, so she of the least so she of the least so she of the least set of go the least set of go holiday the least set warm and the least so home tamps, so I'm go to go ag well, so she's	ext week. often goes i year. e cinema this y morning be you want to o a party last r Italy next e river was cle toilet. now. hing the trip round th gone t	s evening? fore breakfast. come? night and went . week. lean, so we wer e post office. the doctor.	bed ve	ry late.
went -Ing.	ntal.	THE PERSON NAMED IN			
		のでは、	4		
George	Diane	Peter	Harry	Linda	Sheila
Diane	ailing.		4 5 6		
Use the word	E TO SE TO				necessary.
shopp fishing	ing a swim a walk	Portugal			the bank
e sea looks near year went Ann at home as three how weather is no going	ice. Let's go .f.o. ?' 'No, she's go orses. He often go nice. Shall we go	nę i goes o	n the cinema bo	and of ecause the fill to to	caught a lot of fish, m was very boring. o get some money. in the park? buy a lot of things.

mid \ed \em\i



UNIT 53 1/me he/him they/them.etc.

people



subject
object

me

we us

vou you he him she her

they them

subject

I like Ann. We like Ann. we You like Ann. you He likes Ann. he She likes Ann. she They like Ann. they

object Ann likes me. me

Ann likes us. us Ann likes you. Ann likes him. Ann likes her.

Ann likes them.

you him

her them

Use me / him / her etc. (object) after prepositions (for / to / at / with etc.):

- This letter isn't for you. It's for me.

- Where's Alan? I want to talk to him.

- Who is that woman? Why are you looking at her?

We're going to the cinema. Do you want to come with us?They are going to the cinema. Do you want to go with them?

things



subject object

it it they them

- I want that book. Please give it to me.
- I want those books. Please give them to me.
- Diane never drinks milk. She doesn't like it.
- I never go to parties. I don't like them.
- 'Where's the newspaper?' 'You're sitting on it.'

UNIT 53 Exercises

2	Q	5		
<u>))</u>	V	R	1	
N	4	4	1	
ч	P	1	ч	

they them

33.1 Finish the sentences with nim / ner / them.
I don't know those girls. Do you know
53.2 Rnish the sentences. Use I / me / we / us / you / he / him / she / her / they / them.
want to see her butshedoesn't want to seeme
They want to see me but don't want to see We want to see them but don't want to see She wants to see him but doesn't want to see They want to see her but doesn't want to see want to see them but don't want to see We want to see her but doesn't want to see Want to see them but don't want to see You want to see her but doesn't want to see
Rnish the sentences. Use me / us / him / her / it / them. Who is that woman? Why are you looking at
Put in it / them + me / us / him / her / them.
ant those books. Please give to to wants the key. Please give to ant the letter. Please give to want the money. Please give to want the photographs. Please give to

UNIT 54 my / his / their etc.



$\begin{array}{c} \text{I} \rightarrow \\ \text{we} \rightarrow \\ \text{you} \rightarrow \\ \text{he} \rightarrow \\ \text{she} \rightarrow \end{array}$	our your his her	He She	likes likes	my our your his her	job. jobs. job. job. job.
they →	their	They	like	their	jobs.
it →	its	Oxford (=	it) is fa	mous for i	ts university.

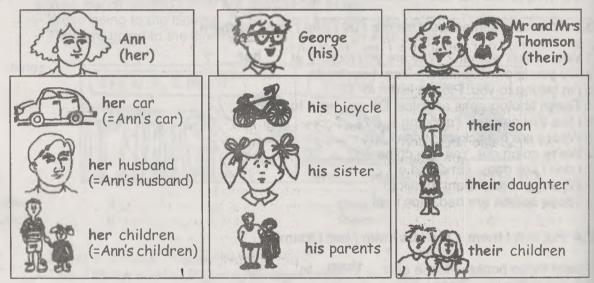
We use my / your / his / her etc. + a noun:

my hands

his mother our house your best friend

her new car their room

his / her / their:



its and it's:

it's (= it is)

Oxford is famous for its university. I like Oxford. It's a nice city. (= It is nice.)

UNIT 54 Exercises

L				
ho	rt	S		
-	-	1		
6			1	
	Ų	9	h	
-	'n	D	Y	
4	4	1	1	
10	a	U		
53	rá	T		

Ar and Mrs

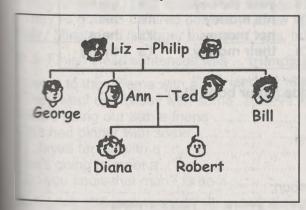
Thomson (their)

daughter

children

54.1 Finish these sentences.	
He He lives with his parents. They live with parents. We parents. Ann lives	5 I parents. 6 John 7 Do you live ? 8 Most children
54.2 Finish these sentences.	
'm going to wash my hands. 2 She's going to wash We're going to	4 He's going to

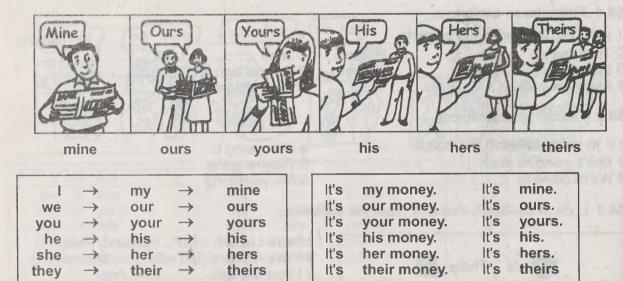
54.3 Look at the family tree and finish the sentences.



- 1 I saw Liz with ...her... husband, Philip.
 2 I saw Ann and Ted with children.
 3 I saw Ted with wife, Ann.
 4 I saw George with brother, Bill.
 5 I saw Ann with brother, Bill.
 6 I saw Liz and Philip with son, Bill.
 7 I saw Ann with parents.
 8 I saw Diana and Robert with parents.
- 24 Put in my / our / your / his / her / their / its.

ke my job.
Do you likejob?
Does your father likejob?
- Sally is married husband works in a bank.
know Mr Watson but I don't know wife.
Put on coat when you go out. It's very cold.
favourite sport is tennis. I play a lot in summer.
sister plays tennis too but favourite sport is athletics.
e're staying at a very nice hotel room is very comfortable.
and Mrs Baker live in London but son lives in Australia.
mank you for letter. It was good to hear from you again.
e are going to invite all friends to the party.
hn is a teacher but sister is a nurse.
you think that most people are happy in jobs?
gave the money to my mother and she put it in bag.
aften see that man but I don't know name.
ey've got two children but I don't remember names.
company has offices in many places but head office is in New York

UNIT 55 Whose is this? it's mine.



- my / our / your / her / their + a noun (my hands / your book etc.):
 - My hands are cold.
 - Is this your book?
 - Ann gave me her umbrella.
 - It's their problem, not our problem.
- mine / ours / yours / hers / theirs without a noun:
 - These books are mine but this newspaper is yours. (= your newspaper)
 - I didn't have an umbrella, so Ann gave me hers. (= her umbrella)
 - It's their problem, not ours. (= our problem)
 - -- 'Is that their car?' 'No, theirs is green.' (= their car)
- **his** with or without a noun:
 - Is this his camera?
 - -- It's a nice camera. Is it his?
- We say: a friend of mine / a friend of his / some friends of yours etc.:
 - I went out to meet a friend of mine. (not 'a friend of me')
 - Are those people friends of yours? (not 'friends of you')
- Whose ...?

- Whose book is this? (= Is it your book? his book? my book? etc.)

You can use whose with or without a noun:

- Whose money is this? Whose is this?

It's mine.

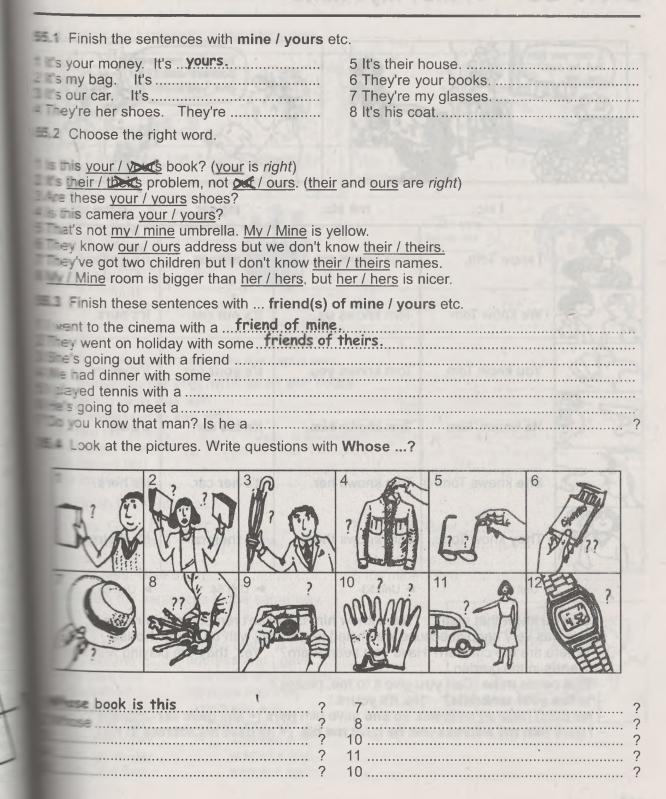
- Whose shoes are these?
Whose are these?

They're John's.



1234567

UNIT 55 Exercises



UNIT 56 I/me/my/mine





	I etc.	me etc.	my etc.	mine etc.
	I know Tom.	Tom knows me .	It's my car.	It's mine .
杂杂	We know Tom.	Tom knows us.	It's our car.	It's ours.
500	You know Tom.	Tom knows you .	lt's your car.	It's yours.
了管	He knows Tom.	Tom knows him .	It's his car.	It's his .
35	She knows Tom.	Tom knows her .	It's her car.	It's hers.
	They know Tom.	Tom knows them.	lt's their car.	It's theirs .
	► Unit 53	▶ Unit 53	▶ Unit 54	► Unit 55

- 'Do you know that man?' 'Yes, I know him but I can't remember his name.'
- She was very happy because we invited her to stay with us at our house.
 'Where are the children? Have you seen them?' 'Yes, they are playing with their friends in the garden.'

- That pen is mine. Can you give it to me, please?
 'Is this your umbrella?' 'No, it's yours.'
 He didn't have an umbrella, so she gave him hers.(= she gave her umbrella to him)
 I gave him my address and he gave me his. (= he gave his address to me)

UNIT 56 Exercises

Finish the sentences in the same way.

1				
16	PAR S		7	
Po	3	પ્યુ	7	
1	-	1	~	
5	4			N
2	1		7	الر
K	7	-	~	21

mine etc.

s mine.

sours.

's yours.

t's his.

it's hers.

It's theirs

▶ Unit 55

is name. house. aying with t

r umbrella to ess to me)

Do you know that man?	Do you know that woman?
is name.	Yes, I know but I can't remember
Do you know these people?	Do you know me ?
but I	Yes, I but

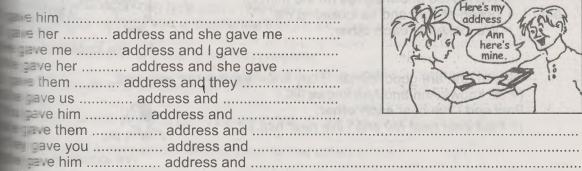
Finish these sentences in the same way.		
nvited her to stay with us at our house vited us to stay with nvited me to stay with her to stay with vited them to		house house
vited him	***************************************	
Frish the sentences.		
e mine. Give them to me. Significant of the signif	5 It's ours. Give	
sh the sentences in the same way.	Hamiram	-

≥e him

her address and she gave me

address and I gave address and she gave them address and they address and

we him address and

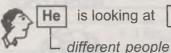


UNIT 57 myself / yourself / himself etc.



Jack is looking at Tom. He is looking at him.

Tom is looking in the mirror. He is looking at himself.



is looking at him





He is looking at

himself

the same person -



1	\rightarrow	me	\rightarrow	myself	- 1	looked at myself.	
he	\rightarrow	him	\rightarrow	himself	He	looked at himself.	The state of the s
she	\rightarrow	her	\rightarrow	herself	She	looked at herself.	173
			100	(yourself	You	looked at yourself.	(one person)
you	\rightarrow	you	\rightarrow	yourself yourselves	You	looked at yourselves.	(two or more people)
				ourselves	We	looked at ourselves.	
thoy		thom		themselves	They	looked at themselves	

I cut myself with a knife. (not 'I cut me')

- She fell off her bicycle but she didn't hurt herself.

- Do you sometimes talk to yourself when you are alone?

- If you want some more food, help yourselves.

- Did they pay for themselves or did you pay for them?

- 'Did you all have a nice time?' 'Yes, we enjoyed ourselves.'

by myself / by yourself etc. = alone

- I went on holiday by myself. (= I went on holiday alone.)

- She wasn't with her friends. She was by herself.

-selves and each other

- I looked at myself and Tom looked at himself.

= We looked at ourselves (In the mirror).

I looked at Tom and he looked at me. but

= We looked at each other.





We looked at ourselves

 Jill and Ann are good friends. They know each other very well. (= Jill knows Ann and Ann knows Jill.)

- Paul and I live near each other.

(= Paul lives near me and I live near him.)





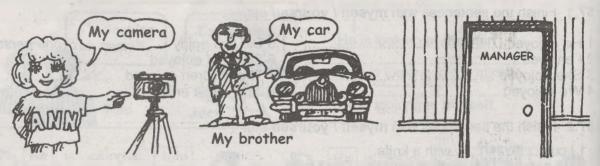
We looked at each other

UNIT 57 Exercises

people

57.1 Finish the sentences with m	yself / yourse	elf etc.
He enjoyed himself. I enjoyed She enjoyed We enjoyed		5 Did you enjoy? (one person) 6 Bill and I enjoyed 7 The children enjoyed
2 Finish the sentences with m	yself / yourse	elf etc.
The police say that the woman Don't pay for me. I want to pay He fell off the ladder but he did I d like to know more about you Goodbye! Have a good holiday	ot. Don't burn ry with eople. They of fen talk to shot for In't hurt Tell me abo	with a towel. with a gun. (one person) (two people)
Make sentences with by my		
went on holiday alone. John lives alone. Do you live alone? The went to the cinema alone. Inen I saw him, he was alone. Don't go out alone. had dinner alone.	John lives Do you She When I saw Don't	holiday by myself.
Finish the sentences. Use e	ach other.	
now him and he knows me. likes him and he likes her. can help me and I can help understands her and she un	Weyou. We ca	and Looked at each other.
gives her presents and she g		sents.
didn't see Jill and Jill didn't and Jill an't speak to her and she did		ne.
often writes letters to him a		

UNIT 58 -'s (Ann's camera/my brother's car etc.)



Ann's camera (her camera)

my brother's car (his car)

the manager's office (his or her office)

2 Li 3 Ci

4 C

5 Ar

58.2

11 lil 2 WI

3 W

4 Do 5 Wr

6 Wh

7 Wh

10 For

12 The

13

14

We normally use -'s (not of ...) for people:

- I stayed at my sister's house. (not 'the house of my sister')
- Have you met Mr Kelly's wife? (not 'the wife of Mr Kelly')
- Are you going to James's party?
- Ann is a girl's name.

You can use -'s without a noun:

- Mary's hair is longer than **Ann's**. (= Ann's hair)
- 'Whose umbrella is this?' 'It's my mother's.' (= my mother's umbrella)
- 'Where were you last night?' 'At **John's**.' (= John's house)
- friend's and friends'



my friend's house = one friend (= his house or her house)



my friends' house = two or more friends (= their house)

We write -'s after friend / student / mother etc. (singular):
my mother's car (one mother) my father's car (one father)

We write -'s after friends / students / parents etc. (plural):
my parents car (two parents)

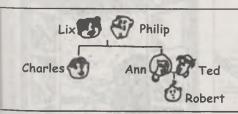
We use **of** ... (not usually -'s) for things, places etc.:

the roof of the building (not 'the building's roof')
the beginning of the film (not 'the film's beginning')
the time of the next train
the capital of Spain the cause of the problem
the meaning of this word

office

UNIT 58 Exercises

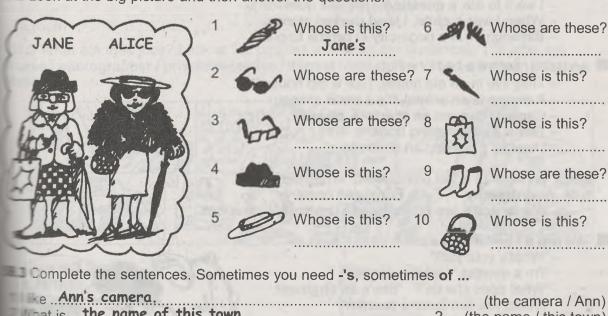
58.1 Look at the family tree and finish the sentences. Use -'s.



Liz and Philip are married. They have two children, Charles and Ann. Ann is married to Ted. Ann and Ted have a son, Robert.

Philip isLiz's husband.	6 Liz is grandmother.
Liz is wife.	7 Ann is sister.
Charles is brother.	8 Ted is husband.
Charles is uncle.	9 Ted is father.
Ann is wife.	10 Robert is nephew.

2 Look at the big picture and then answer the questions.



omplete the sentences. Sometimes	s you need -'s , sometimes of
Ann's camera. That is the name of this town	(the camera / Ann)? (the name / this town)
Then is	? (the birthday / your sister)
- 25 you like	? (the colour / this coat)
e your name at	(the top / the page)
at is	? (the address / Jill)
at was	? (the cause/the accident)
	is near the city centre. (the house /my parents)
	is very good. (the spoken English / Maria)
me the morning is	(the best part / the day)
	very interesting. (the job / my brother)
	(the end / the street)
	is blue. (the favourite colour/Pat)
	are very thin. (the walk/this house)



He's got a camera.



She's waiting for a bus.



It's a nice day.

5

a = 'one'. Don't forget a:

- Do you want a cup of tea? (not 'Do you want cup of tea?')

- Alice works in a bank. (not 'in bank')

- I want to ask a question. (not 'ask question')

When I was a child, I liked reading stories.Birmingham is a large city in central England.

an (not a) before a / e / i / o / u:

- They live in an old house, (nor 'a old house.')

- A mouse is an animal. It's a small animal.

- Can you give me an example, please?

- This is an interesting book.

- I bought a hat and an umbrella.

an hour (h is not pronounced: an (h) our) also a university a European country but (these words are pronounced 'yuniversity', 'yuropean')

We use a / an for jobs etc.:

- 'What's your job?'

'I'm a dentist.' (not 'I'm dentist.')

- 'What does she do?' 'She's an engineer.'

- Would you like to be a teacher?

- Beethoven was a composer.

- Picasso was a famous painter.

- Are you a student?

another (an + other) is one word (not 'an other'):

- Can I have another cup of coffee?

- Open another window. It's very hot.



Exercises UNIT 59

6 university

		1	
6	1		
	1		ı
1	1		

59.1 Write a or an.		
1 . a book	7 organisation	13 question
2 .an old book	8 restaurant	14 important question
3 window	9 Chinese restaurant	15 hamburger
4 horse	10 Indian restaurant	
5 airport	11 accident	17 economic problem

12 bad accident 59.2 What are these things? Choose your answer from the list and write a sentence.

animal bit	ৰ flower fruit mus e vegetable	sical instrument	planet river
1 a duck? 2 the Nile?	lt	7 a carrot?	lt
a rabbit? - tennis? a rose?	It	9 a trumpet?	It

18 nice evening

59.3 What are their jobs? Look at the pictures and finish the sentences. The jobs are: =urse / photographer / private detective / dentist / taxi-drilver / road-sweeper / shop assistant.



5 She
ets (). Write a or an where necessary.
per.



Unit 60 flower / flowers (singular and plural)

The plural of a noun is usually -s:

plural (= two or more) singular (= one)

> some flowers a flower → a week → six weeks a baby → two babies

many nice places a nice place →



a flower



some flowers

Spelling of plural endings ► Appendix 4 (4.1 and 4.2):

-es after -s / -sh / -ch / -x:

dish → dishes church → churches bus → buses $box \rightarrow boxes$ also: potato → potatoes tomato → tomatoes

-v → -ies:

baby → babies party → parties dictionary → dictionaries but -ay \rightarrow -ays / -ey \rightarrow -eys / -oy \rightarrow -oys / -uy \rightarrow -uys $day \rightarrow days$ monkey \rightarrow monkeys boy \rightarrow boys

-f / -fe → -ves:

shelf → shelves

knife → knives

wife -> wives

■ These things are plural in English:



scissors



glasses





jeans

shorts



pyjamas



- Do you wear glasses?

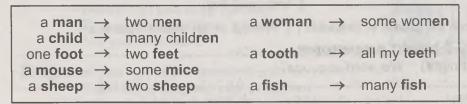
- I need the scissors. Where are they?

You can also say a pair of ... with these words:

a pair of scissors a pair of jeans a pair of tights etc.

- I need a new pair of jeans. or I need some new jeans. (but not 'a new jeans')

Some plurals do not end in -s:



also: a person → two people / some people / many people etc.

She's a nice person. but They are nice people. (not 'nice persons')

- Some people are very stupid. (not 'Some people is')

Police is a plural word:

The police are coming. (not 'The police is coming.')

120

UNIT 60 Exercises

tights

jeans')

60.1 Write the plural.		
1 flower flowers 2 man men 3 boat 4 language 5 watch 6 country 7 knife	8 woman	15 umbrella
60.2 Putin is or are.		
1 Is the shop open? 2 Are the shops open? 3 My hands cold. 4 My nose cold. 5 My feet cold.	6 Where my camera? 7 Where my glasses? 8 Where the children? 9 Your coat dirty. 10 Your jeans dirty.	11 Who those men? 12 Who that woman? 13 Who those people? 14 Mice small animals 15 Where the scissors?
wrong. Write 'okay1 if the sent	s are right and some are wrong. ence is right.	
3 I've got two brother and four lit's a lovely park with a lot of Ther~ are a lot of sheep in Do you make many mistake She's married and she'has Most of my friend are studed He put on his pyjama and we went fishing but we did There were three persons in I'ke your trouser. Where do The town centre is usually the sour trouser.	okay ed a new pair of jeans. or I n ir sister. of beautiful tree. that field. e when you speak English? three childs. ents. went to bed. n't catch many fish. n the car, two women and a mar id you get it? full of tourist.	
4 Which is right? Complete		
The president is not popular A lot of people	ole 99 there for a holiday. ays late. (is or are?) r. The people like h television every day. (watch in the accident. (was or w in that house? (live or live)	m. (don't or doesn't?) h or watches?) rere?) res?) roes?)

UNIT 61 a car/some money (countable/uncountable 1)

A noun can be countable or uncountable.

Countable nouns

For example:

(a) flower (a) man (a) house (a) party (an) idea (a) car

You can use one / two / three ... + countable nouns (you can count them):



one car

two cars

three men

four houses

Countable nouns can be singular (= one) or plural (= two or more):

plural:

my car two cars

the car etc.

the cars some cars many cars etc.

- I've got a car.

- There aren't many cars in the car-park.

Don't use the singular (car / house etc.) alone. You need a / an ▶ Unit 59):

- I haven't got a car. (not 'I haven't got car.')

Uncountable nouns For example:

rice salt oil plastic money music tennis rain air water



rain



money



1234567

61

You cannot say one / two / three ... + these things: one alt

Uncountable nouns have only one form:

the money my money some money much money etc.

I've got some money.

- There isn't much money in the box.

Money isn't everything.

Don't use a / an + uncountable nouns: X money X music

But you can say a piece of ... / a bottle of ... etc. + uncountable nouns:

a piece of cheese

a piece of music

a glass of water

a bowl of rice a game of tennis a cup of coffee

a can of oil

a bottle of milk a bar of chocolate

► Unit 62 countable / uncountable 2

ble 1)

tennis

UNIT 61 Exercises

61.1 What are thesthings? Some are countable and some are uncountable. Write **a / an** if necessary. The names of the things are:

salt soap	toothbrush	umbrella	e credit ca	ard money	, nat	
1		3	4	5	6	
	8	9	10	11	PARTICIAND INDICATE I	
1 salt 2 an umbrella 3	5	79.00	7 8 9	11 .	DIROVA-27- ,	
51.2 Some of the ecessary.	ese sentences no	eed a / an . Som	ne of the senter	nces are right. F	out in a / an wher	
1 haven't got car a car 8 Do you want cup of coffee? 2 Salt is not expensive. okay 9 I never drink milk. 3 Ann never wears hat. 10 Britain is island. 4 Are you looking for job? 11 Jack made very bad mistake. 12 Everybody needs food. 12 Everybody needs food. 13 Can you drive car? 15 Do you like cheese? 14 I've got very good idea.						
1.3 What are these things? Look at the pictures and write a of for each picture. Use						

1.3 What are these things? Look at the pictures and write a ... of ... for each picture. Use be words in the boxes.

1	bar bottle bowl	cup glass jar	loaf piece piece	of	bread chocolate honey	nilk paper soup	tea water wood	
				1				



a Bottle of milk	4	7
2	5	8
3	6	9

UNIT 62 a car/some money (countable/uncountable 2)

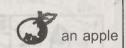
► Unit 61 countable/uncountable 1

a / an and some

a / an + singular countable nouns (car / apple / shoe etc.):

- I need a new car.

- Would you like an apple?



some + plural countable nouns (cars / apples / shoes etc.):

I need some new shoes.

- Would you like some apples? (= two or more apples)



some + uncountable nouns (water / money / music etc.):

- I need some money.

- Would you like some cheese? (or Would you like a piece of cheese?)



some cheese or a piece of cheese

1123

62

23456769

10

52

27

37

51 67

Compare a / an and some:

She bought a hat, some shoes and some perfume.
I read a newspaper, wrote some letters and listened to some music.

Many nouns are sometimes countable and sometimes uncountable. For example:





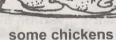


a cake

some cakes



a chicken



some cake or a piece of cake



some chicken or a piece of chicken

■ Be careful with these words – they are usually uncountable in English:

weather information advice hair furniture news

I'm going to buy some bread (or a loaf of bread). (not 'a bread')

- It's nice weather today. (not 'It's a nice weather')

- I need some information about hotels in London.

- They have **some** very nice **furniture** in their house. (*not* 'furnitures')

- She's got long hair. (not 'long hairs')

- I want to make a list. Can you give me some paper (or a piece of paper / a sheet of paper)? (not 'a paper' - 'a paper' = a newspaper)

I've just had some good news about my holiday. (not 'a good news')

a/an ▶ Unit 70 some any ▶ Unit 59

an apple

me apples

ne cheese of cheese

cake

chicken

news

r / a sheet

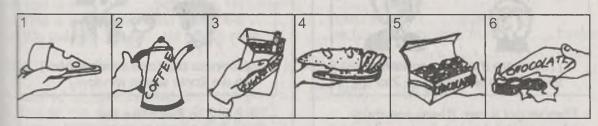
62.1 What did you buy? Use the pictures to make sentences (I bought ...).

1	2	3	4
MOD -	A PA	Canado .	E 10 000
	THE LAND	B MEET	18/
			B

	I	bought	a	hat.	some	shoes	and	some	perf	ume,	
3	1	hought									

4

52.2 Write sentences with Would you like a / an ...? or Would you like some ...?



Would you like some cheese	?	4	?
Would you like	?	5	?
3 Would	?	6	?

E2.3 Put in a / an or some.

- I read newspaper, wrote letters and listened to music.
- 2 I need money. I want to buy food.
- 3 We met interesting people at the party.
- I'm going to open window to get fresh air.
- 5 She didn't eat much for lunch only apple and bread.
- 6 We live in big house. There's nice garden with beautiful trees.
- I'm going to make table. First, I need wood.
- ⁸ We talked to her and she gave us very good advice.
- I want to write letter. I need pen and paper.
- We had nice weather when we were on holiday.

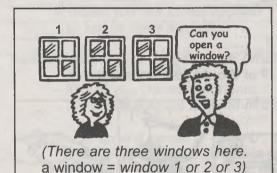
\$2.4 Look at the <u>underlined</u> words in these sentences. Which is right?

- m going to buy some new some / shoes. (shoes is right)
- They are going to buy some new chair / chairs.
- They are going to buy some new furniture / furnitures.
- -e's got big blue eve / eves.
- e's got short fair hair / hairs.
- The tourist guide gave us some information / informations about the town.

UNIT 63 alan and the

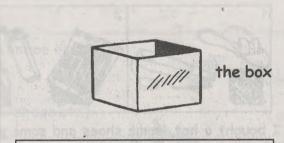
a / an

a box a box a box a box a box



- They've got a car. (there are many cars and they've got one)
- I'm writing a letter. (there are many letters and I'm writing one)
- When we were in London, we stayed at a small hotel. (there are many small hotels in London)
- Rome is a big city in Italy. (there are many big cities in Italy and Rome is one)
- Britain is an island. (there are many islands and Britain is one)

the





(There is only one window here, so we know which window.)

- I'm going to clean the car tomorrow. (= my car)
- I wrote to her but the letter never arrived. (= the letter that I wrote)
- We didn't enjoy our holiday. The hotel was terrible. (= our hotel)
- Rome is the capital of Italy. (there is only one capital of Italy)
- What is the largest island in the world?

We say the ... when it is clear which thing we mean. For example:

the door / the ceiling / the floor / the carpet / the light etc. (of a room) the roof / the garden / the kitchen / the bathroom etc. (of a house) the centre / the station / the airport / the town hall etc. (of a town)

- 'Where's Tom?' To the garden.' (= the garden of this house)

I turned off the light, opened the door and went out. (= the light and the door of

– Do you live very far from the centre? (= the centre of your town)

I'd like to speak to the manager, please. (= the manager of this shop)

12 C 13 To 14 T 15 W 63.2 1 1 tu 2 Ex 3 Ala 4 Ho 5 Enj 6 Ha 7 Wh 8 Yes 9 Pet 63.3

U١

2 E 3 V 4 J

5 N

6 V

71

8 V 9 Y 10 D

11 'L "

next 1 Ro 2 W

3 Ca

bicyc

4 W 5 W 6 Dc

7 'W 8 W 9 Ex

10 It's

UNIT 63 Exercises

box

ere,

there is

door di

63.1 Put in a / an or the.
1 I wrote to her but the letter never arrived. 2 Britain is
4 Jane is very nice person. You must meet her. 5 Montreal is large city in Canada. 6 What is
9 You look very tired. You needholiday. 10 Don't sit onfloor. It's very dirty. 11 'Let's go torestaurant this evening.'
That's
12 Put in a / an or the where necessary in these sentences.
turned off light, opened door and went out. the light the door Excuse me, can I ask question, please? An is best player in our football team How far is it from here to airport? Enjoy your holiday and don't forget to send me postcard! Anat is name of director of film we saw last night? Esterday I bought jacket and shirt. Jacket was cheap but shirt was expensive.
er and Mary have two children, boy and girl. Boy is seven years old and girl is three.
Complete the sentences. Use a / an or the + one of these:
e capital cigarette play difficult language kitchen nice day
ren we were in London, we stayed at a small hotel. In you ride restricted that man doing on restricted of that house? Is he repairing something? In went to the theatre last night but respectively. In would you like resulting that the stay of the wasn't very good. In would you like resulting that the stay of the stay of the wasn't very good. In would you like resulting the wasn't very good. In would you li

UNIT 64 the

the ... = it is clear which thing or person we mean (▶ Unit 63):

- Rome is the capital of Italy. (there is only one capital)

- What is the name of this village? (the village has only one name)

- Excuse me, where is the nearest bank?

- Who is the President of the United States?

– Can you tell me the time, please? (= the time now)

- My office is on the first floor. (= the first floor of the building)

Don't forget the:

Do you live near the city centre? (not 'near city centre')

- Which is the best restaurant in this town? (not 'Which is best')
- the top of ... / the end of ... etc.

- Write your name at the top of the page.

The beginning of the film was not very good.

- My house is at the end of this street.

- The table is in the middle of the room.

- Do you drive on the left or on the right in your country?

the top the the the left middle right the bottom

U١

64.1

18

2 V

3 C

4 +

5 V

6 V 7 V

8 V

9 C

10 A 11 'V 12 W

13 A

14 1:

15 P

161

17 It

181 19 W

20 'F

64.2 age

1 1 liv

2 1 ai

3 1'VE

4 He

5 My 6 I'm

64.3 brea

telev

1 'C

2 W

3 ...

4 D

511

7 'C

8 'W

9 W

10 ...

the same ...

- We live in the same street. (nor 'in same street')

- These books are not different. They are the same. (nor 'They are same.')

Note that we say:

the the sun / the moon / the world / the sky / the sea / the ground / the country: - The sky is blue and the sun is shining.

- I like swimming in the sea.

- They live in a town but they want to live in the country.

the the police / the fire brigade / the army (of a city, country etc.):

My brother is a soldier. He's in the army.

the the piano / guitar / trumpet etc. (musical instruments):

Tom is learning to play the piano.

the the radio but television (without the):

> I often listen to the radio. What's on the radio tonight?

 I like watching television. What's on television tonight?

but Can you turn off the television (= the TV set)?

DINE breakfast / lunch / dinner (without the):

- I never have breakfast. (nor 'the breakfast')

– What are you going to have for lunch?

- Dinner is ready!

DINE

UNIT 64 Exercises

e top

the iddle

bottom

ne.')

e country:

the right

54.1 Put in the where necessary. Write 'okay' if the sentence is correct.
1 Sky is blue and sun is shining. The sky the sun 2 What are you going to have for lunch? okay. 3 Our apartment is on third floor. 4 Help! Fire! Somebody call fire brigade. 5 Who was first man to walk on moon?. 6 Which city is capital of your country? 7 What is largest city in world?. 8 Would you like to be in army? 9 Do you live near sea? 0 After dinner we watched television. 1 Where is your dictionary?' 'It's on top shelf on right.' 2 We live in country, about five miles from nearest village. 3 Ann is coming to see us at end of May or beginning of April. 4 Is this book cheaper than that one?' 'No, they're same price.' 5 Prime Minister is most important person in British government. 6 I don't know everybody in this photograph. Who is man on left? 6 Was a very nice hotel but I don't remember name. 6 I didn't like her first time I met her. 6 What do you usually have for breakfast? 6 Have you got any milk?' 'Yes, there's some in fridge.'
Complete these sentences. Use the tame + one of these words:
colour day problem street time
e in King Street and you live in King Street. We live in the same street. Trived at 8.30 and you arrived at 8.30. We arrived at. So got no money and you've got no money. We've got. So 25 and she's 25. They are Shirt is dark blue and .my jacket is dark blue. They are Jeaving on Monday and you're leaving on Monday. We're leaving on
Complete these sentences. Use the words in the list. Use the if necessary.
fast dinner guitar lunch police radio sky sun
Can you tell methe .time please?' 'Yes, it's half past six.' is a star. It gives us light and warmth. is a star. It gives us light and warmth. Cyou see the film on last night? is hungry this morning because I didn't have stopped me because I was driving too fast. an you play ?' 'No, I can't play any musical instruments.' at did you have for ?' 'Just a salad.' is very clear tonight. You can see all the stars.

UNIT 65 go home / go to work / go to the cinema







They're going to school.



He's in bed.

(without the)

go to work / get to work / be at work / start work / finish work etc.

- What time do you go to work in the morning? (not 'to the work')
- I finish work at 5 o'clock every day.

go to school / be at school / start school / leave school etc.

- What did you **learn at school** today? (not 'at the school')

go to university / be at university etc.

 After she leaves school. (not 'leaves the school') she wants to go to university. (not 'go to the university')

go to church/be at (or in) church

- Don usually goes to church on Sundays. (not 'to the church')

go to bed / be in bed

- I'm tired. I'm going to bed. (not 'to the bed')

go to hospital / be in hospital

- Jack is very ill. He's in hospital. (not 'in the hospital')

go to prison / be in prison

- I wouldn't like to be in prison. (not 'in the prison')

go home / get home / arrive home / come home / walk home / leave home etc. be at home / stay at home etc.

- I'm tired. I'm going home. (not 'to home')
- Are you going out or are you staying at home?

the (with the)

Do you often go to the cinema? We're going to the theatre this evening. I must go to the bank today. Are you going to the post office? You're ill. You must go to the doctor. I'm going to the dentist tomorrow.
Excuse me, I must go to the toilet.

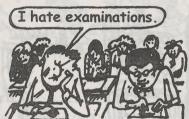
also the station / the airport / the city centre etc. ▶ Unit63)

UNIT 66

I like music I hate examinations



(not 'the music')



(not 'the examinations')



(not 'the cold weather')

66

10

11

12

14

15

DE

Do not say 'the' for general Ideas:

- I like **music**. (=" music in general)
- I like classical music. (= classical music in general)
- We don't eat **meat** very often. (not 'the meat')
- Life is not possible without water. (not 'the life / the water')
- I hate **examinations**. (= examinations in general)
- Do they sell foreign newspapers in that shop?
- I'm not very good at writing letters.

Do not say 'the' for games and sports:

- My favourite sports are **tennis** and **skiing**. (*not* 'the tennis / the skiing')

Do not say 'the' for languages or academic subjects (history / geography / biology / physics etc.):

- Do you think **English** is difficult? (not 'the English')
- Tom's brother is studying physics and chemistry.

the and the

- Flowers are beautiful. (= flowers in general)
 Your garden is very nice. The flowers are beautiful. (= the flowers in your garden)
 - I don't like cold weather. (= cold weather in general)
- but The weather isn't very nice today. (= the weather today)
- Are you interested in history?but Are you interested in the history of your country?
- Everybody needs food. (= food in general)
 but It's a nice hotel and the food is very good.



UNIT 66 Exercises

ather')

66.1 What do you think about these love / I like / I don't mind	e things? Begin your sentences with: (= it'sokay) / I don't like / I hate	
2 (dogs) 3 (hard work) 4 (Italian food) 5 (loud music) 6 (small children) 7 (hot weather) 8 (staying in hotels) 9 (opera)	ations.	
66.2 Are you interested in these thi	ngs? Write sentences with:	
I'm very interested in I'm interested in I'm not interested in	I know a lot about I don't know much about I don't know anything about	epinteri bel
2 (politics) 1 3 (sport)	in these sentences. Which is right (the	
3 Everybody needs friends / the formula of the following friends / the formula of the coffee / the coffee / the coffee?' ' 6 Jan doesn't go to parties / the portugation of the formula of	The potatoes are very nice. (The potatriends. It's in the cupboard.' arties very often. bular sport.	t <u>oes</u> is <i>right</i> .)
11 Money / The money doesn't alw 12 English / The English is the lang 13 Children / The children learn thin 14 Excuse me, can you pass saft / 15 I enjoy eating in restaurants / th	ter / the cold water. aintings / The paintings are very beautical ays bring happiness / the happiness. guage of international business. happiness / the things very quickly. the salt, please? e restaurants.	Control with a second
17 enjoy taking photographs / the	<u>e capitalism</u> is a good economic system <u>photographs</u> . It's my hobby.	р.

UNIT 67 the (names of places)

Places (continents / countries / states / islands / cities / towns / villages etc.)

Usually we do not say 'the' + names of places:

- France is a very large country. (not 'the France')

- Cairo is the capital of Egypt.

- Corsica is an island in the Mediterranean.

But we say the + republic / states / kingdom:

the Republic of Ireland / the Irish Republic the United States (of America) (the USA)

the United Kingdom (the UK)

Places in towns (streets / buildings etc.)

Usually we do not say 'the' + names of streets, squares etc.:

- Kevin lives in Coronation Street.

— Where is Highfield Road, please?

- Trafalgar Square is in the centre of London.

We do not say 'the' + name of place + airport / station / university / castle etc.:

Munich Airport Westminster Abbey

Edinburgh Castle

Paddington Station Cambridge University London Zoo

But we usually say the+names of hotels / restaurants / pubs / cinemas / theatres / museums:

the Hilton (Hotel)

he Star of India (restaurant)

the Science Museum the National Theatre

the Odeon (cinema) the Tate Gallery (art gallery)

Seas, rivers etc.

We say the + names of oceans / seas / rivers / canals:

the Atlantic (Ocean) the Mediterranean (Sea)

the (River) Nile

the Suez Canal

the ... of ...

We say the + names with ... of

the Republic of Irelandthe the Great Wall of China

the Bank of England the Tower of London

the north / south / east / west / middle (of ...):

- I've been to the north of Italy but not to the south.

the -s (plural names)

We say the + plural names (the -s) of countries / islands / mountains:

the | the Netherlands | the Canary Islands

the Philippines

the Andes

UNIT 67 Exercises

iversity

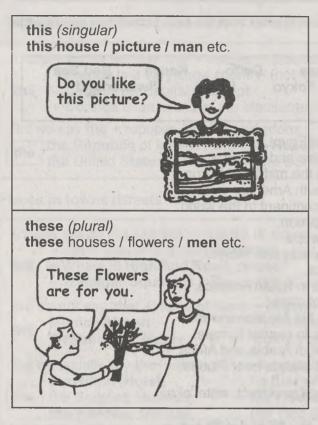
museums:

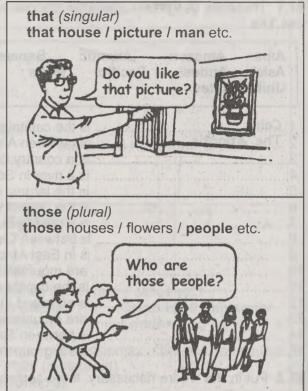
These are geography questions. Choose your answer from the box. Sometimes you need to use **The**.

Alps	Amazon	Atlantic	Baha	amas	Calro	Kenya	Red Sea
Asia United	Andes States	Pacific	Malta	Tokyo	Rhine	Swit	tzerland
Officed	States						

5	is the capital of Egypt. is between Africa and America. is a country in the middle of Europe. is a river in South America. is the largest continent in the world. is the largest ocean. is a river in Europe. is between Canada and Mexico. is in East Africa. are mountains in South America. is the capital of Japan. is an island in the Mediterranean. are mountains in central Europe. is between Saudi Arabia and Africa. are a group of islands near Florida.
	necessary. If the sentence is correct, write 'okay'.
an is a large city an is a large city an is a large city anila is the capita ational Gallery is i Most of the best shocky Mountains an London, Houses ave you ever beer	n to National Theatre? the National Theatre ying?' 'At Intercontinental Hotel.' in north of Italy. tal of Belgium. I of Philippines. In Trafalgar Square in London. I ops are in Merrion Street. I of Parliament are beside River Thames. In to British Museum?
Est night we saw a u must visit Muse an studied chemis	oil and cowboys. a play at Royal Theatre. bum of Modern Art. It's very interesting. stry at London University. udies, I'm going to United States for a year.
ere are two ciner out sail from Brita ary comes from a	adies, Fin going to Offited States for a year. s Atlantic Ocean and Pacific Ocean. mas in our town – Regal and Plaza. ain to Denmark, you cross North Sea. small village in west of Ireland. ge continent but it has a large population.

UNIT 68 this / that / these / those



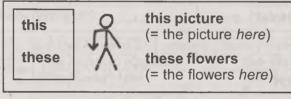


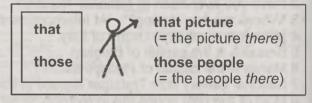
2

PL

9 10 68

birc





- We use this / that / these / those with a noun (this hotel / that girl etc.) or without a noun (this / that etc.):
 - This hotel is expensive but it's very nice.- 'Who's that girl?' 'I don't know.'

 - Do you like these shoes? I bought them last week.
 - Don't eat those apples. They're bad.
 - This is a nice hotel but it's very expensive.
 - 'Excuse me, is **this** your bag?' 'Oh, yes. Thank you very much.'
 - 'Who's that?' (= Who's that girl / woman?) 'I don't know. I've never seen her before.'
 - Which shoes do you like most? These or those?

this one / that one ► Unit 69

68.1 Put in this or these.

iere)

1 this chair 2 these chairs Put in that or those.	4 things	5 children 6 place	7 houses 8 trousers
9 picture	11 men	13 eggs	15 room
10 socks	12 tree	14 woman	16 plates

58.2 Write questions: Is this / that your ...? or Are these / those your ...?



3 Complete the sentences. Use this / that / those / those + these words:

ands house plates postcards seat seat



UNIT 69 one / ones

■ one (= a ...)



Would you like

one ?

= Would you like

a chocolate

3/

4/

5 4

6 A

69.

21'3T 4T 50

69.

th

th

th

It

1 A:

B:

A: 2 A:

B:

A:

B:

A:

B

A.

B:

5 A.

3 A

one = a / an ... (a chocolate / a book / an apple etc.)

- I need a pen. Have you got one? (one = a pen)
- A: Is there a bank near here?
 - B: Yes, there's **one** at the end of this street. (**one** = **a bank**)

one and ones

ones (singular)



Which one? (= Which hat?)

one = hat / book / girl etc.

this one / that one

- Which car is yours? This one or that one? (= this / that car)

the one ...

A: Which hotel did you stay at?B: The one near the station.

the ... one

- I don't like the black coat but 1 like the brown one.
- Don't buy that camera. Buy the other one.

a / an ... one

- This cup is dirty. Can I have a clean one?
- That biscuit was nice. I'm going to have another one. (another ➤ Unit 59)

ones (plural)



Which ones? (= Which flowers?)

ones = flowers / books / girls etc.

We use **these / those** alone (*not usually* 'these ones / those ones'):

- Which flowers do you want? These or those?

the ones ...

A: Which cigarettes are yours?B: The ones on the table.

the ... ones

- I don't like the red shoes but I like the green ones.
- Don't buy those apples. Buy the other ones.

(some) ... ones

- These cups are dirty. Can we have some clean ones?
- My shoes are very old. I must buy some new ones.

UNIT 69 Exercises

l like those pictures.

olate

ate / etc.)

ine.

ris etc.

not usually

t? These

ours?

but I like

Buy the

we have

must buy

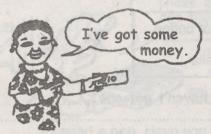
	B has just had a cup of coffee B can't ride a bicycle B hasn't got an umbrella
1 A: Can you lend me a pen? 2 A: Would you like to have a car? 3 A: Have you got a bicycle? 4 A: Can you lend me an umbrella? 5 A: Is there a chemist near here? 6 A: Would you like a cup of coffee?	B: I'm sorry, I haven't got one. B: No, I don't. B: No, I can't. B: I'm sorry, B: Yes,
clean better big differe	
	an one
3 That's not a very good photograph 4 This box is too small. I need 5 I want today's newspaper. This is 6 Why do we always go to the same	restaurant? Let's go to
3 That's not a very good photograph 4 This box is too small. I need 5 I want today's newspaper. This is 6 Why do we always go to the same 59.3 Use the information in the box the coat is black the girl is tall with long hair the house has got a red door	restaurant? Let's go to

10 A: Have you seen my photographs?

A:

UNIT 70 some any

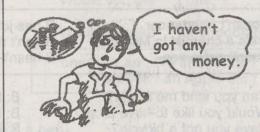
some



Use some in positive sentences:

- I'm going to buy some eggs.
- There is some ice in the Tridge.
- They made **some** mistakes.
- She said something.
- I saw somebody (or someone).

anv



Use any in negative sentences:

- I'm not going to buy any eggs.
- There isn't any ice in the fridge.
- They didn't make any mistakes.
- She didn't say anything.
- I didn't see anybody (or anyone).

any and some in questions

In most questions (but not all) we use any:

- Is there any ice in the fridge?
- Did they make any mistakes?
- Are you doing anything this evening?
- I can't find Ann. Has anybody seen her?

We normally use some (not any) when we offer things (Would you like some ... ?):

- A: Would you like **some** coffee?
- B: Yes, please.
- A: Would you like something to eat?
- B: No, thank you. I'm not hungry. or ask for things (Can I have some ... ? / Can you lend me some ... ? etc.):
 - 'Can I have some soup, please?'
 - 'Can you lend me some money?'

Have you got any money?

9

10

11

12

13

14

15 16

70.

air

pho

21 31

41

51

6 5

7 E

81

91

10 (

11 Y

127

70.3 18

2 1

3 D

41)

5 ...

6 T

7 1'1 8 W

910 1010



'Yes, of course. Help yourself.'

'I'm sorry, I can't.'

Compare some and any:

- We've got some cheese but we haven't got any bread.
- I didn't take any photographs but Ann took some. (= some photographs)
- You can have some coffee, but I don't want any. (= any coffee)
- I've just made some coffee! Would you like some? (= some coffee)
- I haven't got any money. Can you lend me some? (= some money)

UNIT 70 Exercises

1 I'm going to buy
batteries chairs cheese friends languages milk money
enotographs problems shampoo stamps
Can't buy you a drink. I haven't got
Put in somebody (or someone) / something / anybody (or anyone) / anything.
She said

UNIT 71 not + any no none



He hasn't got any money.

He's got no money.

A: How much money has he got? B: None.

2

W

71

4

5

6

7

10 7

71.3

ciga

que

1 1'm

21d 3 Th

4 It's 5 I'm 5 He

7 The

81 ca

9 The

71.4

1 Hov 2 Hov 3 Hov 4 Hov 5 Hov

not (n't) + any

I'm not going to do any work this evening.
There aren't any good hotels in the town. There aren't any good hotels in the town.

There aren't any good hotels in the town.
Ann took some photographs but I didn't take any. (= any photographs)

no + noun (no money / no job etc.): no ... = not + any or not + a We use no ... especially after have / has (got) and there is / are:

- He has got no money. (= He hasn't got any money.)

- There are no buses after 11.30. (= There aren't any buses after 11.30.)

- It's a nice house but there's **no** garden. (= It's a nice house but there is**n't a**

Remember: negative verb + any positive verb + no
- I haven't got any friends. or I've got no friends.

(but not 'I haven't got no friends.')

- There aren't any good hotels in this town. or There are no good hotels in this

Use no + noun (no money / no friends / no sugar etc.):

- ream walt. Eve got **no time**.
- There is **no sugar** in your coffee.

one atone (without a noun):

Use none atone (without a noun):

- 'How much time have we got?' 'None (= no time). We must go now.'

- 'How many mistakes did you make?' 'None.' (= no mistakes)

none and no-one

none = O (zero). None is an answer for How much? / How many? (things or people):

- 'How much money have you got?' 'None.' (== no money)
- 'How many people did you meet?' 'None.' (= no people)

no-one = nobody (> Unit 72). No-one is an answer for Who?:
- 'Who did you meet?' 'No-one.' (= nobody)

142

UNIT 71 Exercises

11.1 Write these sentences again with no .
He hasn't got any money. There aren't any pictures on the walk. There are Carol hasn't got any free time. Carol There isn't a restaurant in this hotel.
inte these sentences again with any.
He's got no money. He hash't got any money. There's no oil in the tank. There The got no stamps. I. Tom's got no brothers or sisters.
2 Putin no or any .
There aren't
Complete the sentences. Use any or no + one of these words: The sentence of these words: The sentence of these words:
swimming-pool
rot going to do
Sive short answers (one or two words) to these questions. Use none where necessary.
any letters have you written today? Two/A lot/None. any sisters have you got? uch coffee did you drink yesterday? any photographs have you taken today? any legs has a snake got?

UNIT 72

B: Nobody.

not + anybody / anyone / anything nobody / no-one / nothing

not + anybody / anyone nobody / no-one (for people)

There isn't anybody in the room. There is nobody in the room.
A: Who is in the room?



There **isn't anything** in the bag. There **is nothing** in the bag. A: **What's** in the bag?

B: Nothing.

anybody = anyone nobody = no-one (-body and -one are the same):

I don't know anybody (or anyone).

- There is no-one (or nobody) here.

not (n't) + anybody / anyone / anything

- Please don't tell anybody (or anyone).

- Jack has a bad memory. He can't remember anything.

nobody = not + anybody no-one = not + anyone

nothing = not + anything

- I'm lonely. I've got nobody to talk to. (= I haven't got anybody)

- The house is empty. There is **no-one** in it. (= there is**n't anyone**)

She said nothing. (= She didn't say anything.)

You can use **nobody / no-one / nothing** at the beginning of a sentence or alone (without other words):

- The house is empty. **Nobody** lives there. (not 'Anybody lives there.')

- Nobody is perfect.

- 'Who did you speak to?' 'No-one.'

- 'What did you say?' Nothing.' (not 'Anything.')

Remember: negative verb + anybody / anyone / anything positive verb + nobody / no-one / nothing

- He doesn't understand anything. (not 'He doesn't understand nothing.')

- Don't tell anybody. (not 'Don't tell nobody.')

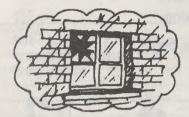
- There is nothing to do in this town. (not 'There isn't nothing to do.')

UNIT 72 Exercises

nout

72.1 Write these sentences again with	nobody / no-one / nothing.	
1 There isn't anything in the bag. 2 There isn't anybody in the office. 3 I haven't got anything to do. 4 There isn't anything on TV tonight. 5 Jack hasn't got anyone to help him. 6 We didn't find anything.	There's nothing in the bag. There's	
72.2 Write these sentences again with	anybody / anyone / anything.	
1 There is nothing in the bag. 2 I've got nothing to read. 3 There's nobody in the bathroom. 4 We've got nothing to eat. 5 There was no-one on the bus. 6 She heard nothing.	There's isn't anything in the bag. I haven't got	
72.3 Answer these questions with nob	ody / no-one / nothing.	
1 What did you say? Nothing. 2 Who saw you? Nobady. 3 What do you want? 4 Who did you meet?	7 What happened?	
Now answer the same questions with for Use nobody / no-one / nothing or any		
1a I didn't say anything. 2a Nobody saw me. 3a don'ta didn't.	6a I	
72.4 Complete the sentences with nobo	ody / no-one / nothing / anybody / anyo	ne / anything.
where he was go a 'What are you doing this evening?' 9 I don't know about 10 'How much does it cost to visit the mass go and the second secon	emember anything told me I wasn't hungry.' knows where he is. He didn't te oing. '	e.'

UNIT 73 some-/any-/no-+-body/-one/-thing/-where



Somebody (or someone) has broken the window. somebody / someone = a person but we don't know who



There is something in her mouth.

something = a thing but we don't know what



2 4 Put i

6

7 8

Now anytl

5a I

6a I'n

73.2 1 It's

> 2 To 3 Do

4 'Li

5 'W

6 'W

7 'Di 8 Th

9 'W

10 'Do

11 'WI

12 I'm

73.3 (

You c

som

som

1 We d

2 Then 3 I'm b 4 Why

5 Wou

5 Child

TI wan

B All the

Tom lives somewhere near London.

somewhere = in a place or to a place but we don't know where

people	(-body	or -one

things (-thing)

places (-where)

someanynosomebody or someone anybody or anyone nobody or no-one

something anything nothing

somewhere anywhere nowhere

-body and -one are the same: somebody = someone, nobody = no-one etc.

somebody someone something somewhere

- There is **somebody** (or **someone**) in the garden.
- She said something but I didn't understand her.
- They live somewhere in the south of England.

anybody anyone anything

anywhere

nobody no-one nothing nowhere

- in questions (► Unit 70) - Is there anybody (or anyone) in the garden?
- Are you doing anything this evening?
- Did you go anywhere interesting for your holidays?

in negatives (not + any-) (► Units 70 and 72)

- There isn't anybody (or anyone) in the garden.
- It's dark. I can't see anything.
- I'm staying here. I'm not going anywhere.
- There is **nobody** (or **no-one**) in the garden.
- 'What did you say?' 'Nothing.'
- I don't like this town. There is nowhere to go.

You can use something / anybody / nowhere etc. + to:

- I'm hungry. I want something to eat. (= something that I can eat)
- He hasn't got anybody to talk to. (= anybody that he can talk to)
- There's **nowhere to go** in this town. (= nowhere where people can go)

146

UNIT 73 Exercisas 73.1 Put in somebody (or someone) / something / somewhere. She said **something**. What did she say? What have you lost? I've lost Where did they go? They went Who are you going to telephone? I'm going to telephone Put in nobody (or no-one) / nothing / nowhere. Nothing. What did you say? Where are you going? but we What do you want? Who are you looking for? www answer the same questions with full sentences. Use not + anybody (or anyone ything / anywhere. 🔁 I didn't say anything. 7a I 🛂 I'm not going..... 8a I Put in somebody / nothing / anywhere etc. it's dark. I can't see ... anything.... Tom lives ... somewhere .. near London. Do you know about computers? - Listen!' 'What? I can't hear' 5 What are you doing here?' 'I'm waiting for' Nhat's wrong?' 'I've got in my eye.' Did see you?' 'No, They weren't hungry, so they didn't eat what is going to happen?' 'I don't know.knows.' looking for my lighter. I can't find it Complete the sentences. Use a word from the first box + to + a word from the second box. can use a word more than once.) 90 methina anything nothing do drink eat to mewhere anywhere nowhere read sit play stay don't go out very much because there's nowhere to go. ere isn't any food in the house. We haven't got

are you standing?1 'Because there isn't

ent I'm going to buy a magazine. hotels were full. There was

you like?' 'Yes, please – a glass of orange juice.'

bored. I've got

eren need

UNIT 74 every everybody / everything etc.



Every house in the street is the same.

(every house in the street = all the houses in the street)

Use every + singular noun (every house / every country / every time etc.):

- Alice has been to every country in Europe. (not 'every countries')
 - Every summer we have a holiday by the sea.
 - She looks different every time I see her.

Use a singular verb (is I was I has etc.) after every ...:

- Every house in the street is the same. (not 'Every house ... are')
- Every country has a national flag. (not 'Every country have')

Compare every and all:

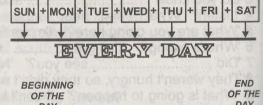
- Every student in the class passed the examination.
 All the students in the class passed the examination.
- Every country has a national flag.
 All countries have a national flag.
- every all day / morning / evening / night / summer etc.

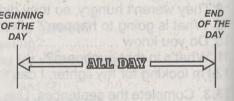
every day = on all days:

- A: How often do you read a newspaper?B: Every day.
- Bill watches TV every evening.(= on all evenings of the week)

all day = the complete day from beginning to end:

- The weather was bad yesterday. It rained all day.
- I was tired after work yesterday, so I watched TV all evening. (= the complete evening)





everybody (or everyone) / everything / everywhere

everybody / everyone (people) everything (things) everywhere (places)

- Everybody (or Everyone) needs friends. (= all people need friends)
- Have you got everything you need? (= all the things you need)
- I've lost my watch. I've looked everywhere for it.
 (= I've looked in all places)

Use a singular verb after everybody / everyone / everything:

Everybody has problems. (not 'Everyboiy have')

UNI

74.1 C

ady -

1 . Ever

3

4 Kay is

5 'Did yo

74.2 Pu

1 Yeste

2 Bill w 3 Barba

4 I was 5 I buy

6 'How 7 'Were

out af

8 The w 9 We di

10 My sis

11 I saw

12 They g

74.3 Put

1 Everyl

2 Joy kno 3 I like the

4 It's a nic

5 Ken nev

6 Let's hav

7 Their ho

74.4 Com



Are

3

4

5

UNIT 74 Exercises

all people

he things

for it.

1 Complete the sentences. Use every + one of these words:	Ī
room student time word	
Every student in the class passed the examination. If y job is very boring. is the same. In the hotel has a private bathroom. Ay is a good tennis player. When we play, she wins	
2 Put in every or all.	
resterday it rained	nt
out after lunch.' The weather was nice last Sunday, so we sat in the garden	g.
Put in everybody (or everyone) / everythina / everywhere.	
knows about computers. ke the people here is very friendly. a nice hotel. It's comfortable and is clean. never uses his car. He goes by motor-bike. shave dinner is hungry. ar house is full of books. There are books you say is true.	
Complete the answers to these questions. Use everybody.	
Company of them I some of us dies and the some of this cake but no	
Do you know George? Are you tired today? Do you like Mary? Are you going to the party? Have you seen the film? Were you surprised? Yes, everybody khows George. Yes, Yes, Yes, Yes, Yes, Yes, Yes, Yes,	

UNIT 75 all most some no / none any











all

mos

×

some

no / none / not + any

anv

all / most / some / no / any + noun (all cities / most people etc.)

all most some no any



- All big cities have the same problems.
- Most people like Jack.
- I like some classical music but not all.
- There are no buses on Sundays.
- or There aren't any buses on Sundays.

Don't use of in these sentences:

- Most children like playing. (not 'Most of children')
- Some birds cannot fly. (not 'Some of birds')
- most of the ... / some of my ... / none of these ... etc.

most some none any	of	the this / that these / those my / your etc.
-----------------------------	----	---

- Most of my friends live in London.
- Some of this money is yours.
- Have you read any of these books?
- None of the students passed the examination.
- I don't know any of those people.

Remember:

most children some people no friends but but but most of the children some of these people none of my friends

Compare:

Most children like playing. (= most children in general)
 but Most of the children at this school are under 11 years old.

We usually say all **the** ... / all **my** ... etc. (without of):

- All the students failed the exam.
- She has lived in London all her life.
- all of it / most of them / some of us etc.

all most some	of	it them
none	OI	us you

- You can have some of this cake but not all of it.
- A: Do you know those people?
- B: Most of them, but not all of them.
 - Some of us are going out tonight. Would you like to come with us?
- He's got a lot of books but he hasn't read any of them.

some / any ➤ Unit 70

no / none ► Unit 71

Exercises **UNIT 75**

examination

all of it.

you like to com

d any of them

need of (some o			n brackets (s c	ome / most etc.,). Sometimes you
1 Most 2 Some of 3	. people like Ja this money is people are the shops in ge money in my friends birds ca sport anywhere to st	ck. (most) s yours. (some stupid. (some) n the city centr the pictures his money. s are married. (the people i an fly. (most) the film but I s are very dan ay	e close at 5.3 banks. (ms in the living- (all) none) n this photogr didn't like the gerous. (some eese. It's delie	room. (any) raph? (any) e ending. (most) e) otels are full. (all) cious. (some)) . the time. (most)
75.2 Look at the	pictures and a	nswer the que	stions. Use al	I / most / some	/ none of them.
How many of the How many of th	he boxes are o	n the table?		が た た た た た た た た た た た た た	
How many of the How many of th	he windows are she people are s	e open? standing?			• • • • • • • • • • • • • • • • • • • •
3.3 Answer thes	se questions. U	se the word in	brackets (all	/ most / some /	none) + of it / of
ow much of the re your friend ow many of the re the ques re the shops of the row many of the row many of the row you seen	s going to the phose books had his money do yetions in the testopen tomorrow hose people do stand the conve	party? (most) ve you read? (all) to want? (all) t easy? (most) (some) you know? (nersation? (most)	one)t)	of it.	
					15

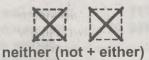
UNIT 76 both either neither

■ We use **both / either / neither** to talk about *two* things or people:





either



- Rosemary has two children. Both are married. (= both children)

– A: Do you like classical music or pop music?

B: **Both**. (= classical *and* pop)

– Would you like tea or coffee? You can have **either**. (= tea *or* coffee)

- A: Do you want to go to the cinema or the theatre?

B: **Neither**. I want to stay at home. (**neither** = not the cinema or the theatre)

both / either / neither + noun:

both	+	plural	both	windows / books / children etc.
either neither	+	singular	either neither	window / book / child etc. window / book / child etc.

- Ann has got two sisters and a brother. **Both sisters are** married.

- Last year I went to Paris and Rome. I liked both cities very much.

- I read two books but **neither book was** very interesting.

- There are two ways from here to the station. You can go either way.

both / either / neither of

both either of those / these my / your / Tom's etc
--

- I like both (of) those pictures.
- Both (of) Ann's sisters are married.
- I haven't read either of these books.
- Neither of my parents is English.



You can say both the ... / both those ... / both my ... etc. (without of): both of those pictures or **both** those pictures

both of them / neither of us etc.

- Ann has got two sisters. **Both of them are** married.
- Tom and I didn't eat anything. Neither of us was hungry.
- Who are those two people? I don't know either of them.

76.1 Put in both / either / neither.	
1 Ann has got two sisters. Both	. sisters are married.
2 There were two pictures on the wall. I did	
3 It was a very good football match	teams played well.
4 It wasn't a good football match	team played well.
6 We went away for two days but the weath	her wasn't very good. It rained on days
7 'I bought two newspapers. Which one do	you want?' ' It doesn't matter
which	Managara and a second
one.'	
8 I invited Jack and Jill to my party but	of them came.
10 'Which jacket do you prefer this one or the	l always walk.' nat one?' 'I don't like of them.'
11 'Do you work or are you a student?' '	
12 Ann and I didn't know the time because	of us had a watch.
76.2 Write sentences for the pictures. Use E	Roth and Neither
70.2 Write sentences for the pictures. Ose L	John and Neither
1 2 3 0 0 00	1 Both cups are empty.
	2 are open
	3 wearing a hat 4 cameras
SCALL MENT OF A	5 to the airport
5 6 33	6 is right
4 63 69 5 6 Answer	utsum tos sio amo. Kis sio si
12 ARROS ARROS 7+8 = 13	
7+8-16	

76.3 A man and a woman answered some questions. Their answers to all the questions were the same. Write sentences with **Both / Neither of them ...**

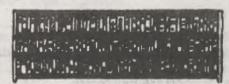
NI-	0	
NO	No —	→ 1 Neither of them is married.
21	21 —	→ 2 Both of them are 21.
Yes	Yes	→ 3 students
No	No	4 a car
London	London	5
Yes	Yes	6
No	No	7
No	No	8
Yes	Yes	9
	No 21 Yes No London Yes No No Yes	21 21 —— Yes Yes —— No No London London Yes Yes No No No No

vas hungry er of them

UNIT 77 a lot much many



a lot of money much money



a lot of books many books

much + uncountable noun (► Unit 61): much money

much time

much food much coffee many + plural noun:

many people

many books many shops many questions

a lot of + uncountable or plural noun:

a lot of food

a lot of coffee

a lot of people

a lot of shops

2345

much / many are more usual in questions and negative sentences:

- Do vou drink much coffee?
- How much money have you got?
- She hasn't got much money.
- A: Have you got any money?
 - B: I've got some but not much.
- Diana spoke to me but she didn't say much.
- Do you know many people?
- How many photographs did you take?
- He hasn't got many friends.
- A: Did you take any **photographs**?
- B: I took some but not many.
- **a** lot (of) is more usual in positive sentences:
 - I drink a lot of coffee.
 - They haven't got much money but they've got a lot of friends.
 - There aren't many hotels in the town but there are a lot of restaurants.

You can use a lot without a noun, Compare:

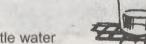
- He ate a lot of food. (a lot of + noun)
- He ate a lot. (not 'a lot of) but

Note that we say:

- There is a lot of food / money / coffee etc. (singular verb)
- There are a lot of trees / shops / people etc. (plural verb)
 - A lot of people speak English. (not 'A lot of people speaks')
- Sometimes much or a lot = often:
 - 'Do you watch TV much?' 'No, not much.' (= not often)
 - We like films, so we go to the cinema a lot.

UNIT 77 Exercises

e but not much / many.
I've got some but not much. I've got some but
low many?
How many photographs did you take ? How did you buy? ? ? ? ? ? ? ?
e. Ind the world. In you speak? In you speak? In but I didn't eat Is in the museum. Inomics. Inomic
much and a lot.
cinama much
cinema much ? much ? mming ? ? ? Yes, Yes, Yes, Yes, No, No, No, No,



a little water

- (a) little + uncountable noun:
- (a) little water
- (a) little time
- (a) little money
- (a) little soup
- a little = some but not much:
- She didn't eat anything but she drank a little water.
- I speak a little Spanish. (= some Spanish but not much)
- A: Can you speak Spanish? B: A little.
- X little (without a) = nearly no ... or nearly nothing:
- There was little food in the fridge. It was nearly empty.

You can say very little:

- She's very thin because she eats very little. (= nearly nothing)

little and a little:

- a little is a positive idea:
- They have a little money so they're not poor. (= some but not much money)
- X little is a negative idea:
- They have little money. They are very poor. (= nearly no money)





a few books



- (a) few + plural noun:
- (a) few books
- (a) few questions
- (a) few people
- (a) few days
- a few = some but not many:
- Last night I wrote a few letters.
- We're going away for a few days.
- I speak a few words of Spanish.
- A: Have you got any cigarettes? B: A few. Do you want one?
- **X** few (without a) = nearly no ...:
- There were few people in the park. It was nearly empty.

You can say very few:

- Her English is very good. She makes very few mistakes.

few and a few:

- a few is a positive idea:
- I've got a few friends, so I'm not lonely. (= some but not many friends)
- **X** few is a *negative* idea:
- I'm sad and lonely. I've got few friends. (= nearly no friends)





1234567

8

UNIT 78 Exercises

ons

not

78.1 Answer the questions with a little or a few.	to selle true i forti appl unpit a sepretar ga
1 Have you got any money? A little. 2 Have you got any stamps? 3 Do you want any sugar?	5 Have we got any petrol? 6 Does he speak English? 7 Do you know many people? 8 Would you like some soup?
78.2 Put in a little or a few + one of these words	S:
air chairs days friends ho	ouses Jotters milk Russian
1 Yesterday evening I wrote a few letters 2 Can I have	e, please? ago.' Italian and a shop and fresh
78.3 Complete the sentences. Use very little / vecoffee hotels mietakes rain	Life and Tall December of the Appendix Control of
Her English is very good. She makes very feel a literal desired in the second of t	ke it. There are
78.4 Put in little or a little / few or a few.	
There was Little food in the When did you see Sarah?' He's very lazy. He does They're not rich but they've got Last night I went to a restaurant with the TV service is not very good. There are can't decide now – I need 1 Nearly everybody has a job. There is He's not well-known.	days ago.'workmoney – enough to livefriendsgood programmestime to think about itunemployment.

UNIT 79 big / tired / beautiful etc. (adjectives)

adjective + noun (nice day / blue eyes etc.):

adjective +
It's a nice
Ann has got blue
There's a very old
Do you like Italian
I don't speak any foreign
There are some beautiful yellow

noun
day today.
eyes.
church in this village.
food?

languages.

flowers in the garden.

The adjective is before the noun:

- They live in a modern house. (not 'a house modern')

The endings of adjectives do not change:
a different place different places (not 'differents')

be (am / is / are / was / were etc.) + adjective:

The weather is nice today.

- Those flowers are very beautiful.

A: Can you close the window, please?B: Why? Are you cold?

- The film wasn't very good. It was boring.

- Please be quiet. I'm reading.

get + adjective ► Unit 51



234567

■ look / feel / smell / taste / sound + adjective:



- You look tired.' Yes, I feel tired too.'
- George told me about his new job. It sounds interesting.
- Don't cook that meat. It doesn't smell good.

Compare:

Не	is feels looks	tired.	They	are look sound	American.	It	is smells tastes	good.

UNIT 79 Exercises

good.

79.1 The words in the box are adjectives (**black / foreign** etc.) or nouns (**air / job** etc.). Use an adjective and a noun to complete each sentence.

air black clouds	dangerous expensive foreign	fresh holiday hotels	interesting job knife	lan gua ges long old	person photograph problem	serious sharp
1 Jack doesn't speak any						
look(s) feel(s)	seund(s) smell(s)	taste(s)	+ ill awful	nice new	surprised bappy	
1 You	sound happy	2 lt		3	31	
	A September 1		7.50		(000)	}
- You	45VVXXXXII	5 Th	ey		6 It	
		10				
In these conversations you don't agree with Alex. Use the word in brackets ().						
You sound happy. He's American. She's very rich. You look cold. I'm English. They are very friendly. Your meal looks good. Po I? (feel) I don't feel happy. Is he? (sound) He doesn't Is she? (look) She Do I? (feel) I Are you? (sound) You Are they? (look) They Does it? (taste) It						











He ate his dinner very quickly.

Suddenly the shelf fell down.

Quickly and suddenly are adverbs.

adjective + -ly → adverb:

adjective quick adverb quickly

bad badly

sudden suddenly

careful carefully heavy heavily etc.

Spelling

► Appendixi 4(4.2):

easy → easily

heavy → heavily

Adverbs tell you how something happens or how somebody does something:

- The train stopped suddenly.
- I opened the door slowly. - Please listen carefully.
- I understand you perfectly.



It's raining heavily.

Compare: adjective (► Unit 79)

- Sue is very quiet.
- Be careful!
- It was a bad game.

adverb

Sue speaks very quietly. (not 'speaks very quiet')

Listen carefully! (not 'listen careful')

Our team played badly.

These words are adjectives and adverbs: fast hard late early

but

- Ben is a fast runner.

Ben can run fast. (not 'fastly') She works very hard. (not 'hardly')

- Her job is very hard. - The bus was late / early.

I went to bed late / early.

good (adjective) → well (adverb):

- Her English is very good.

She speaks English very well. (not 'speaks English very good')

- It was a good game.

Cur team played well.

But well is also an adjective (= not ill, in good health):

- 'How are you?1

'I'm very well, thank you. And you?'

ry quiet')

iks English

Exercises UNIT 80

80.1 Look at the pictures and complete the sentences with one of these adverbs:

dangerously



fast angrily quietly













- 1 It's raining heavily.
- 2 He sings very
- 3 They came in
- 4 She shouted at me
- 5 He was driving
- 6 She can run very

80.2 Choose a verb + adverb from the box to complete these sentences.

come	explain	know	<u>Jisten</u>
sleep	think	win	work

carefully carefully

quickly hard

clearly easily

well

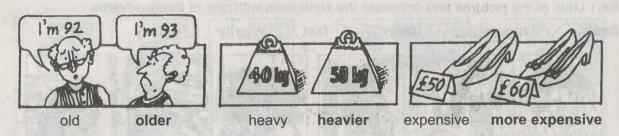
- I'm going to say something very important, so please ... listen ... to me carefully.

- 4 They At the end of the day they're always tired.
- 5 I'm tired this morning. I didn't last night.
- 6 You're a much better tennis player than me. When we play, you always
- 7 before you answer the question.
- 8 Our teacher isn't very good. He doesn't things very

80.3 Choose the right word.

- 1 I opened the door _____/ slowly. (slowly is right)
- 2 Why are you angry /angrily? I haven't done anything.
- 3 Bill is a <u>careful</u> /carefully driver. He drives <u>careful</u> / carefully.
- 4 Can you please repeat that slow / slowly?
- 5 Come on, George! Why are you always so slow / slowly?
- 6 The party was very good / well. I enjoyed it very much.
- 7 Tom didn't do very good / well in his examination.
- 8 Jane is studying <u>hard / hardly</u> for her examinations.
- 9 'Where's Diane?' 'She was here, but she left sudden / suddenly.'
- 10 I met them a long time ago, so I don't remember them very good / well.
- 11 My brother isn't very good y well at the moment.
- 12 Don't eat your dinner so quick / quickly. It's not good for you.
- 13 Those oranges look nice / nicely. Can I have one?
- 14 I don't want to work for that company. They pay their workers very bad / badly.
- 15 Please be guiet / guietly. I'm reading.

UNIT 81 old / older expensive / more expensive



thin → thinner

5

2 8

1:

Older / heavier / more expensive are comparative forms. The comparative form is -er (older) or more ... (more expensive).

short adjectives (1 syllable) old / cheap / nice etc. → -er

old → older slow → slower **cheap** → cheap**er** nice → nicer late → later big → bigger big → bigger hot → hotter

- Rome is old but Athens is older. (nor 'more old')

- Is it cheaper to go by car or by train? (not 'more cheap')

- Sue wants to buy a bigger car.

► Appendix 4(4.4):

Spelling

- This coat is okay but I think the other one is nicer.

far → further but good / well → better bad → worse

The weather wasn't very good yesterday but it's better today.

– Which is worse – a headache or toothache?

- 'Do you feel better today?' 'No, I feel worse.'

'No, further. About two miles.' - 'How far is the station? A mile?'

-y adjectives (2 syllables) easy / heavy etc. → -ier

heavy → heavier early → earlier easy → easier

- Don't send a letter. It's easier to phone me. (not 'more easy')

- The bag is **heavy** but the suitcase is **heavier**.

long adjectives (2 / 3 / 4 syllables) modern (= MOD-ERN) / expensive (= EX-PENS-IVE) etc. → more ...

polite → more polite tired → more tired modern → more modern interesting → more interesting expensive → more expensive

- I don't like this house. I prefer **more modern** houses. (*not* 'moderner')
- Don't talk about your job. Let's talk about something more interesting.

- Is it more expensive to go by car or by train?

▶ Unit 62 older than ... more expensive than ... 81.1 Look at the pictures and write the comparative (older / more modern etc.).

Acky So kg	2	3 tortoise snail
heavy heavier	big5	slow
		A 3
expensive	high	dangerous

	- J	dangerode minimum.
old older 2 strong 3 happy	der / more modern	etc.). / difficult B large Grave Growded P pretty
1.3 Write the opposite.		The County States States of the County Orland
	3 cheaper	5 nearer
11.4 Complete the sentences:		
Sue's car isn't very big. She This house isn't very modern You're not very tall. Your bro Bill doesn't work very hard. Is My chair isn't very comfortal Jill's idea wasn't very good. These flowers aren't very ni My case isn't very heavy. You	n. I prefer	modern houses.
isn't very warm today. It w	aş	yesterday.
Britain isn't very big. France London isn't very beautiful.	is	
This knife isn't very sharp. F	lave you got a	were

UNIT 82 older than ... more expensive than ...

▶ Unit 81 oid / older I'm taller than you

expensive / more expensive



She's taller than him.

The Europa Hotel is more expensive than the Grand.

- We use than after comparatives (older than ... more expensive than ... etc.):
 - Athens is older than Rome.
 - Are oranges more expensive than apples?
 - It's easier to phone than to write a letter.
 - 'How are you today?' 'Not bad. Better than yesterday.'
 - Last night the restaurant was more crowded than usual.
- We say ... than **me** / than **him** / than **her** / than **us** / than **them**:
 - I can run faster than him. or I can run faster than he can.

 - You are a better singer than me. or You are a better singer than I am.
 - I got up earlier than her. or I got up earlier than she did.
- more / less than ...
 - A: How much did your shoes cost? £25? B: No, more than that. (= more than £25)
 - The film was very short less than an hour.
 - They've got more money than they need.
 - You go out more than me. (= more often than rne)
- MORE THAN 20 20 LESS THAN 20

a bit / much + older / more expensive etc.









Box A is a bit bigger than Box B.

bigger older a bit better than ... much more difficult more expensive

Box C is much bigger than Box D.

- Canada is much bigger than France.
- Jill is a bit older than Gary she's 25 and he's 241/2.
- A car is much more expensive than a motor-bike.

82.1 Write sentences about Liz and Ben. Use than.





1 I'm 26.

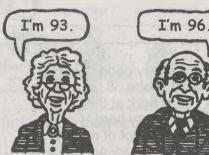
Grand.

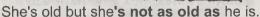
THAN 20

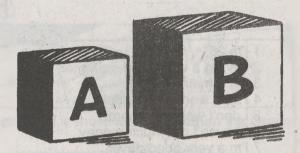
- 2 I'm not a very good swimmer.
- 3 I'm 1 metre 68 tall.
- 4 I start work at 8 o'clock.
- 5 I don't work very hard.
- 6 I haven't got much money.
- 7 I'm a very good driver.
- 8 I'm not very friendly.
- 9 I'm not a very good dancer.
- 10 I'm very intelligent.
- 11 I speak French very well.
- 12 I don't go to the cinema very much.

- 1 I'm 24.
- 2 I'm a very good swimmer.
- 3 I'm 1 metre 66 tall.
- 4 I start work at 8.30.
- 5 I work very hard.
- 6 I've got a lot of money.
- 7 I'm not a very good driver.
- 8 I'm very friendly.
- 9 I'm a good dancer.
- 10 I'm not very intelligent.
- 11 I don't speak French very well.
- 12 I go to the cinema a lot.

	12 i go to tilo omornia a lot.
Liz is older than Ben. 2 Ben is a better swimmer than Liz. 3 Liz is taller 4 Liz starts 5 Ben Liz. 6 Ben has got	9 Ben
32.2 Complete the sentences. Use than.	
He isn't very tall You 're taller than him She isn't very old. You're I don't work very hard. You work He doesn't smoke very much. You We don't know many people. You They haven't got much money. You've got Can't run very fast. You can She hasn't been here very long. You He isn't very interesting. You	
23 Complete the sentences with a bit or much	n + a comparative (older / better etc.).
is 25. Gary is 24 ¹ / ₂ . Jill is bit older than ack's mother is 54. His father is 68. Jack's mother access ?100. Yours cost ?96. My can esterday I felt terrible. Today L feel okay. ack's mother is 54. His father is 68. Jack's mother is 200. Stephan is 25. Gary is 24 ¹ / ₂ . Jill is bit older than ack's mother is 54. His father is 68. Jack's mother is 68.	otherneraay it was ten degreesyesterday.
-nn	







Box A isn't as big as Box B.

- not as ... as ...:
 - Rome is **not as old as** Athens. (= Athens is **older**)
 - The Grand Hotel isn't as expensive as the Europa. (= the Europa is more expensive)
 - I don't play tennis as often as you. (= you play more often)
 - The weather is better than yesterday. It isn't as cold. (= as cold as yesterday)
- not as much as ... / not as many as ... (much / many > Unit 77):
 - I haven't got as much money as you. (= you've got more money)
 - I don't know as many people as you. (= you know more people)
 - I don't go out as much as you. (= you go out more)

Compare not as ... as and than:

- Rome is **not as old** as Athens.
 Athens is **older than** Rome. (*not* 'older as Rome')
- Tennis isn't as popular as football.
 Football is more popular than tennis.
- I don't go out as much as you.
 You go out more than me.
- We say ... as me / as him / as her etc.:
 - She's not as old as him. or She's not as old as he is.
 - You haven't got as much money as me. or You haven't got as much money as I have.
- Note that we say the same as ...:
 - My hair is the same colour as yours. (not 'the same like')
 - I arrived at the same time as Tom.

1A.. 2A 3C 4A 5Bh

6 C v

1 Athon 2 My 3 You 4 We

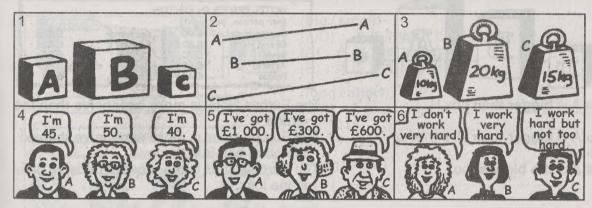
5 I've 83.3

1 Athe 2 I doi 3 You 4 I fee

B3.4 I

2 (stree

83.1 Look at the pictures and write sentences about A, B and C.



A is bigger than C but not as big as B.	
2 A is	but not
5 B has got 6 C works	
33.2 Write sentences with as as	
Athens is older than Rome. Rome isn't as 2 My room is bigger than yours. Your room isn 3 You got up earlier than me. I didn't	n't
3.3 Putin as or than.	
Athens is olderthan Rome. I don't watch TV as much you. You eat more me. I feel better I felt yesterday.	5 Jim isn't as clever
II.4 Read about the three people and complet be word in brackets ().	e the sentences with the same as Use
The state of the s	

JULIA
I'm 22.
I live in Hill street.
I got up at 7.15.
I haven't got a car.

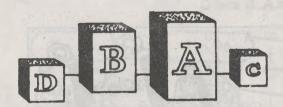
oney as I

I'm 24.
I live in Baker street.
I got up at 7.15.
My car is green.

I'm 24.
I live in Hill street.
I got up at 7.45.
My car is green.

age)	Andrew is the same age as Caroline.
street)	Julia lives
me) ´	Julia got up
colour)	Andrew's

UNIT 84 the oldest the most expensive



Box A is bigger than box H.

Box'A is **bigger than** all the other boxes.

Box A is the biggest box.

	OTEL PRICES I per person, per		V	
R	urope Hotel	£ 90	Grosvenor	£ 55
	rand Hotel	£ 80.50	Bennett's	£ 53
	oyal	£ 70	Cariton	£ 50
	storia	£ 60	Star	£ 45
	alaos	£ 60	Station	£ 40

The Europa Hotel is **more expensive than** the Grand.

The Europa Hotel is **more expensive than** all the other hotels in the town.

The Europa Hotel is **the most expensive** hotel in the town.

3

4

5

84.

E AI

1.5 2 E

84.3

TITH

2 lt

3 It's

4 Sh

6 It's

7 It v

8 He

Bigger / older / more expensive etc. are comparative forms ► Unit 81). Biggest / oldest / most expensive etc. are superlative forms.

■ The superlative form is **-est** (**oldest**) *or* **most** ... (**most expensive**):

short adjectives (old / cheap / nice etc.) → the -est:

old → the oldest cheap → the cheapest nice → the nicest but good → the best bad → the worst Spelling ► Appendix 4(4.4): big → the biggest hot → the hottest

-y adjectives (easy / heavy etc.) → the -iest:
easy → the easiest heavy → the heaviest pretty → the prettiest

long adjectives (modern / expensive / interesting etc.) → the most ...
modern → the most modern interesting → the most interesting

- Don't forget the. We say: the oldest ... / the most expensive ... etc.:
 - The church is very old. It's the oldest building in the town.
 (= it is older than all the other buildings)
 - What is **the longest** river in the world?
 - Money is important but it isn't the most important thing in life.
 - Excuse me, where is the nearest bank?
- You can use the oldest / the best / the most expensive etc. without a noun:
 - Ken is a good tennis player. I think he is the best in the club.
 (the best = the best player)
- You can use the superlative + I've ever ... / you've ever ... (► Unit 16):
 - It was a very bad film the worst film I've ever seen.
 - What is the most unusual thing you've ever done?

e hotel

1	- A	B	T D	(A/D) A	(big / small) (A/D)A is bigger than D. (A)A is the biggest (B) B is the smallest.		
2	A B C D	(3 2 10 G)	B A C	(C/A) C (D) D is	(long / short) (C/A) C is		
3	Em 23 Em		1 24 I'm 2	(young / old) (D/C) D (B) B (C)			
4	多面	CO	(D/A) (C)	(expensive / cheap) (D/A)(C)(A)			
RESTAURANT A excellant RESTAURANT B not bad RESTAURANT C good but not wmderhil RESTAURANT D awhil 84.2 Write sentences with a superlative (the longest etc.).							
Syc	dney Brazil erest Jupiter ska the Nile	large long high	country city river	planet state mountain	_	the solar system South America Australia	
2 Ev							
	Complete the se					in the town.	
2 It v	is building is very vas a very happy a very good film e's a very popula	day. I . It's	t was			In the town of my life I've ever seen in our country.	

was a very bad mistake. It was l've ever made. I've ever made. It's a very pretty village. It's l've ever seen. was a very cold day. It was of the year. Te's a very interesting person. He's l've ever met.

84.1 Write sentences with comparatives (older etc.) and superlatives (the oldest etc.).



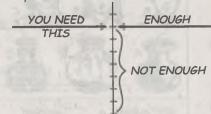
Alice wants to buy a sandwich.

A sandwich is 80 pence. Alice has got only 60 pence.

So she can't buy a sandwich because she hasn't got **enough** money.

(not) enough + noun (enough money / enough houses etc.):

- A: Is t ere enough sugar in your coffee?
 B: Yes, thank you.
- We wanted to play football but we didn't have enough players.
- Why don't you buy a car? You've got enough money. (not "money enough")



bi

21

3 5

47

85

big

234

5

678

9

10

85. bre

1.19

2 T

3 D

4 W

5T

6D

(not) enough without a noun:

- I've got some money, but not enough to buy a car. (= I need more money to buy a car.)
- 'Would you like some more to eat?1 'No, thanks, I've had enough.'
- You are always at home. You don't go out **enough**.

adjective + enough (go enough / warm enough etc.):

He isn't tall enough (to reach the shelf).



- A: Shall we go swimming?
 - B: No, it's not warm enough. (not 'enough warm')
- Can you hear the radio? Is it loud enough for you?
- Don't buy that coat. It's nice but it isn't long enough. (= it's too short)

Remember

enough + noun: but adjective + enough:

enough

enough money good enough

for somebody / something

enough time old enough

enough people loud enough

We say

cullavariant his anaugh for ma

to do something

- This pullover isn't big enough for me.
- I haven't got enough money for a car.
- but I haven't got enough money to buy a car. (not 'for buy a car')
 - Is your English good enough to have a conversation?
 - There weren't enough chairs for everybody to sit down.

UNIT 85 Exercises

Don't go to work today.

e she

ENOUGH

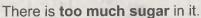
to buy

r you?

85.1 Look at the pictures and complete the sentences. Use enough + one of these words: big chairs money paint long strona Jall wind I've got £1.50, but I need £2 22 5 chairs 6 people 1 She hasn't got enough money. 5 His legs aren't 2 He isn't tall enough. 6 There aren't 3 She hasn't got 7 There isn't 4 The car isn't 8 He isn't 85.2 Complete the sentences. Use enough + one of these words: fruit leud old clothes eat time tired 1 'Is there .enough sugar.. in your coffee?' 'Yes, thank you.' 2 Can you hear the radio? Is it ...loud enough ... for you? 3 He can leave school if he wants to – he's 4 Did you have to answer all the questions in the exam? 5 This house isn't for a large family. 6 She's very thin. She doesn't 8 It's late but I don't want to go to bed now. I'm not 9 He's got He doesn't need any new ones. 10 She's not a very good tennis player because she doesn't 85.3 Complete the sentences. Use **enough** + one of these words + **to** ...: bread money old warm well money I, haven't got enough money to buy a car. I'm not going to buy a car. 2 They're not getting married. They're not married. 3 Don't sit in the garden. It isn't the garden. We haven't got We can't make sandwiches. 5 They didn't go on holiday. They didn't have

You aren't







analn'i Bix

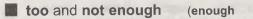
The shoes are too big for him.

- **too much / too many** = more than you want, more than is good:
 - I don't like the weather here. There is too much rain. (= more rain than is good)
 - Let's go to another restaurant. There are too many people here.
 - She studies all the time. I think she studies too much.

much / many

►Unit 77

- too + adjective (too big / too loud etc.):
 - Please turn the radio down. It's too loud. (= louder than I want)
 - I can't work. I'm too tired.



▶ Unit 85):



- There's too much sugar in my coffee. (= more sugar than I want)
- I don't feel very well. I ate too much.
- The radio is too loud. Can you turn it down, please?
- The hat is too big for her.



- There's not enough sugar in my coffee. (= I want more sugar)
- You're very thin. You don't eat enough.
- The radio isn't loud enough. Can you turn It up, please?

12345678 图 123456

- The hat isn't big enough for her. (= it's too small for her)
- We say: too ... for somebody / something to do something:
 - These shoes are too big for me.
 - It's a small house too small for a large family.

but

- It's too cold to go out. (not 'for go out')
- I'm too tired to work.
- She speaks too fast for me to understand her.

86.1 Look at the pictures and complete the sentences. Use too + one of these words: big crowded fast high hot Jeud 5 The radio is too loud. 4 She's driving The net is..... 5 The ball is ■ t's 6 The restaurant is 5.2 Complete the sentences. Use too much / too many or enough. You're very thin. You don't eat ... enough. I don't like the weather here. There's ... too much rain an't wait for them. I haven't got time. - Did you have to eat?' 'Yes, thank you.' You drink coffee. It's not good for you. ou don't eat fruit. You should eat more. There was nowhere to sit on the beach. There were people. Complete the sentences. Use **too** or **enough** + one of these words: busy expensive -loud Loud sharp warm Pease turn the radio down. It is too loud. an you turn up the radio, please? It isn't loud enough. con't want to walk home. It's Plan't buy anything in that shop. It can't put all your things in this bag. It can't talk to you now. 1..... an't cut anything with this knife. It Complete the sentences. Use too (+ adjective) to (do something). not going out. (cold) It's too cold to go out. Ey're not getting married, (young) They're ody goes out at night, (dangerous) It's phone Ann now. (late) It's didn't say anything, (surprised) They were

UNIT 87 word order (1)

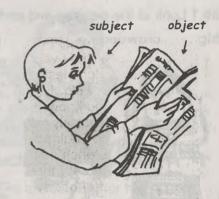
verb + object

Jill reads a newspaper every day. subject verb object

The verb (reads) and the object (a newspaper) are usually together:

Jill reads a newspaper every day.

(not 'Jill reads every day a newspaper.')



Exercises

subject	verb	+ object	
i i	speak	English	very well.
	watched	television	all evening.
	invited	a lot of people	to the party.
	phoned	the police	immediately.

- I like Italian food very much. (not 'I like very much Italian food.')

- Ann borrowed some money from the bank. (not 'Ann borrowed from the bank some money.')

- I opened the door very quietly. (not 'I opened very quietly the door.')

George usually wears a black hat. (not 'George wears usually a black hat.')

- Why do you always make the same mistake? (not 'Why do you make always the same mistake?')

place and time

time (when? how long? how often?) place (where?)

every morning. George walks to work We arrived at the airport at 7 o'clock. Are you going to the party
They've lived in the same house tonight? for 20 years. I usually go to bed early.

place is usually before time:

They go to school every day. (not 'They go every day to school.')

- I went to the bank yesterday afternoon. (not 'I went yesterday afternoon to the

- Jack's brother has been in hospital since June. (not '... since June in hospital.')

UNIT 87 Exercises



the bank

ck hat.') ke always the

emoon to the

in hospital.")

87.1 Put the words in the right order.
1 (a newspaper / reads / every day / Jill) Jill reads a newspaper every day. 2 (football / don't Uke / very much / I) 3 (lost / I / my watch / last week). 4 (Tom / the letter / slowly / read). 5 (London / do you know / very well?)
17.2 Put the words in the right order.
to work / every morning / walks / George) . George walks fo work every morning, at the party / we / early / arrived) We didn't go / yesterday / I / to work) to work / tomorrow / are you going?) they / since 1984 / here / have lived) will you be / this evening / at home?) next week / they / to London / are going) to the cinema / last night / did you go?) on Monday / here / will they be?) goes / every year / to Italy / Jill) n London / Alice / in 1951 / was born) If in bed / this morning / my breakfast / had)
October / Barbara / to university / is going)
any times / my parents¹/ have been / to the United States)
beautiful bird / this morning / I / in the garden / saw)
my umbrella / last night / I think I left / in the restaurant)

sometimes rarely / seldom never ever usually often always both also iust still already all

These words (always / usually etc.) are often with the verb in the middle of a sentence:

- My brother **never speaks** to me.
- She's always late.
- Do you **often eat** in restaurants?
- I sometimes eat too much. (or Sometimes I eat too much.)
- I don't want to go to the cinema. I've already seen the film.
- I've got three sisters. They're all married.
- **always / never** etc. go *before* the verb:

	verb
always	go
often -	⊦ play
never	feel
etc.	etc.

- I always go to work by car. (not 'I go always')
- Ann often plays tennis.
- I sometimes feel sad.
- They usually have dinner at 7 o'clock.We rarely (or seldom) watch television.
- Tom is a good footballer. He also plays tennis and volleyball. (not 'He plays also tennis ...')

2

3

4

5

88

1

2

7 8

9

10

11 12

13 14

151

88.:

1 D

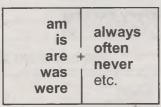
2 D

3 AI 4 H

5 D 88.4

Fr.

- I've got three sisters. They all live in London.
- but always / never etc. go after am / is / are / was / were:



- I am never ill. (not 'I never am ill.')
- They are usually at home in the evenings...
- In winter it is often very cold here.
- When I was a child, I was always late for school.
- 'Where's George?' 'He's still in bed.'
- I've got two brothers. They're both doctors.
- always / never etc. go between two verbs (have ... been / can ... find etc.):

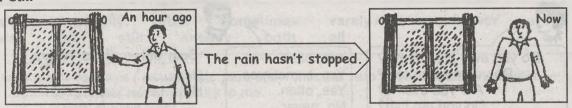
verb 1 will can do etc.	always often never	verb 2 go find remember etc.
have has	etc.	gone been etc.

- I will always remember you.
- It doesn't often rain here.
- Do you usually go home by car?
- I can never find my keys.
- Have you ever been to Rome?
- A: Where's Linda?
 - B: She's just gone out. (she's = she has)
- A: Where are your'friends?
- B: They've all gone to the cinema.
- still ▶ Unit 69 ▶ Unit 75 both ► Unit 76

88.1 Look at Sam's answers to the questions and write sentences with often / never etc. ever Sam often plays tennis. Do you ever play tennis? Yes. often. 2 Do you ever smoke? Yes, sometimes. He ntence: 3 Are you ever ill? Yes, often. He..... 4 Do you eat fish? No. never. 5 Are you ever late for work? Yes, always. Do you ever write letters? Very rarely. 88.2 Write these sentences again with the words in brackets (). 1 My brother speaks to me. (never) My brother never speaks to me. 2 Susan is polite. (always) Susan 3 I finish work at half past five. (usually) I..... 4 Jill has started a new job. (just) Jill 5 I go to bed before midnight. (rarely) 6 The bus isn't late. (usually) 7 I don't eat meat. (often) volleyball. 10 Do you work in the same place? (still) 11 They stay in the same hotel. (always)..... 12 Diane doesn't work on Saturdays. (usually)...... 13 I can remember his name. (never)..... 14 What do you have for breakfast? (usually)..... 15 When I arrived, Jan was there. (already) When I arrived, **38.3** Write sentences with **also**. Use the words in brackets (). Do you play football?. (tennis) Yes, and I also play tennis. Do you speak Italian? (French) Yes, and I..... Are you tired? (hungry) Yes, and - Have you been to England? (Ireland) Yes, 5 Did you buy any clothes? (some books)..... Write sentences with both and all I'm married, I was born in England, I live in New York. car? live in London. I live in London. like football. I like football. m a student. I'm a student. ve got a car. Ive got a car. 's = she has) They both live in London. nema. 5 They married. They football. students. 6 They England. cars. 7

UNIT 89 still yet

still



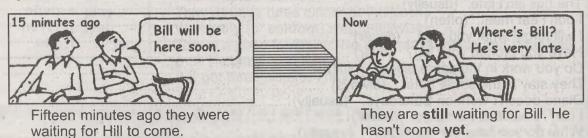
An hour ago it was raining.

It is still raining now.

still = something is the same as before:

- A: Does your daughter work?
- B: No, she's still at school. (= she was at school before and she's at school now)
- I had a lot to eat but I'm still hungry.
- 'Did you sell your car?1 'No, I've still got it.'
- 'Do you still live in Paris?' 'No, I live in London now.'

yet



Yet = until now.

We use yet in negative sentences (He hasn't come yet.) and in questions (Has he come yet?)

Yet is usually at the end of a sentence:

- 'Where's Tom?' 'He isn't here yet.' (= He will be here but until now he hasn't come.)
- 'What are you doing this evening?' 'I don't know yet.' (= I will know later but I don't know at the moment.)
- 'Are you ready to go yet?' 'Not yet. Wait a moment.' (= I will be ready but I'm not ready at the moment.

We often use the present perfect (I have done ► Units 15-16) + yet:

- 'What's in the newspaper today?' 'I don't know. I haven't read it yet.' (= I'm going to read it but I haven't read it until now.)
- 'Has it stopped raining yet?' 'No, it's still raining.'

Compare yet and still:

- She hasn't gone yet. = She's still here. (not 'She is yet here.')
- I haven't finished eating yet. = I'm still eating.

UNIT 89 Exercises

now)

ate.

I. He

COL

nasnit

er but

out I'm

= I'm

9.1 You meet Carol. The last time you saw her was two years ago. You ask her some guestions th still. Carol - two years ago 1 Do you still play the piano ? 2 I smoke. 2 Do you? 1 | play the piano 3 Are 4 3 I'm a student. 4 | go to the 5 cinema a lot. 6 6 I play tennis. 5 I've got a motor-bike. 19.2 Write questions with yet. was raining ten minutes ago. Perhaps it has stopped now. You ask: Has it stopped raining yet? You are waiting for Ann to arrive. She wasn't here half an hour ago. Perhaps she is here Tou are waiting for me to finish reading the newspaper. Perhaps I have finished now. *You ask:* you? • We are going out together. You are waiting for me to get ready. Perhaps I am ready now. You ask: From can't decide where to go on holiday. Perhaps he has decided now. ou ask: Write three sentences for each situation. Look at the example carefully. before now It was raining. (before) It is still raining, (still) It hasn't stopped raining yet. (yet) (before) They were..... BUS BUS (still)still (yet) The bus (before) He was I'm looking I'm looking (still)a job. for a job for a job. (yet) vet. 7.00 (before) She 7.30 (still) (yet) DINNER (before) Thev (still) (yet)

UNIT 90 Give me that book! Give it to me!

send show give lend pass

After these verbs (give, lend etc.) there are two possible structures:

(give) something to somebody

- I gave the money to Jack.

or (give) somebody something

- I gave Jack the money.

(give) something to somebody

- That book is mine. Give it to me!

- This is your father's key. Can you give it to him?

- I lent my car to a friend of mine.

'Yes, you showed them to us.' – 'Have you seen these photographs?'

	7001	(something)	to (somebody)
Can you	give	this key	to your father? to him? to a friend of mine. to us.
Can you	give	it	
I	lent	my car	
You	showed	them	

(give) somebody something

Give me that book! It's mine. (not 'Give to me that book!')
Tom gave his mother some flowers. (not 'Tom gave to his mother some flowers.') (somebody) (something)

Tom Don't forget to		his mother Jill	some flowers. a birthday card.
Can you	pass	me	the salt, please?
If you see Jack, can you How much money did you		him them?	this letter?

Compare:

- I gave the book to Pat.

bat I gave Pat the book. (not 'I gave to Pat the book.')

We prefer the first structure (give something to somebody) when the thing is it or them:

- I gave it to her. (not usually 'I gave her it.')

- Give them to your father. (not usually 'Give your father them.')

21

31

90

giv

21 31 90.

1 ()

2 (y 3 (y 4 (N

5 (T 6 (y 7 (t) 90.4

2

4

5

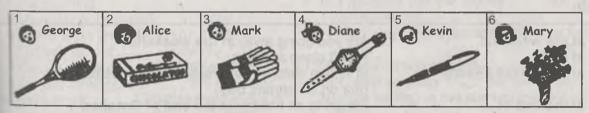
6

90.1 Mark had some things that he didn't want - an armchair, a TV set, some books, some cassettes, a radio and a lamp. He gave these things to different people. Look at the pictures and write a sentence for each thing.

1 Same	2	3	4	5	6
- his brot her	→ Jack	→ his sister	→ a friend	→ his cousin	- Saran

He gave the armchair to his brother.	4
2 He gave	5
³ He	6

90.2 You wanted to give presents to your friends. You thought about it and and you decided to the them the things in the pictures. Write a sentence for each person.



B	gave George a tennis-racket.	4	
В	gave Alice	5	
		6	

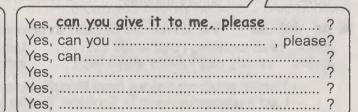
Write questions beginning Can you ...? Use the verb in brackets ().

ou want the salt)	(pass)	Can you pass me the salt.	?
ou need an umbrella)		Can you lend	
ou want your coat)		Can youmymy	
Mary needs a bicycle)	(lend)	Can Mary	?
Tom wants some information			
want to see the letter)	(show)	me	?
Tey need £100)	(lend).		?

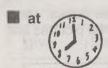
Write questions beginning Can you give ...?



Do you want the book?
Do you want this key?
Do you want these keys?
Do you want this knife?
Do you want this money?
Do you want these letters?



UNIT 91 at 10.30 on Monday in April



at 8 o'clock 10. 30 midnight etc.

- I start work at 8 o'clock.
- The shops close at 6.30 p.m.

on [NOON]

on

Sunday(s) / Monday(s) etc. 25 April / 6 June etc. New Year's Day etc.

- Goodbye! See you on Friday.
- I don't work on Sundays.
- The concert is on 22 November.

in in



April / June etc. 1985 / 1750 etc.

(the) summer / spring etc.

- I'm going on holiday in October.
- Jill left school in 1984.The garden is lovely in spring.

also

at the weekend

at night at Christmas / Easter

at the end of ... at the moment

- Are you going away at the weekend?

- I can't sleep at night.

In Britain children get presents at Christmas.
 (but on Christmas Day)

I'm going on holiday at the end of October.Are you busy at the moment?

in the morning / in the afternoon / in the evening

- I always feel good in the morning.
- Do you often go out in the evening?

hut

on Monday morning / on Tuesday afternoon / on Friday evening / on Saturday night etc.

- I'm meeting Jill on Monday morning.

- Are you doing anything on Friday evening?

In five minutes / in a few days / in six weeks / in two years etc.



now



in five minutes

- Hurry! The train leaves in five minutes.(= it leaves five minutes from now)
- Goodbye. I'll see you in a few days.(= a few days from now)

■ ★ ★ We do not use at / on / in before:

this ... (this morning / this week etc.) every ... (every day / every week etc.)

last ... (last August / last week etc.)
next ... (next Monday / next week etc.)

They're going on holiday next Monday. (not 'on next Monday')
Last summer we went to Scotland. (not 'In last summer')

iday.

rember.

ctober.

pring.

etc.) eek etc.)

2 at		1977	8 Friday	per 10 half past two
3	Wednesday 6.	September	9 1984	12 winter
14	the evening the morning Monday morn	17 nig	ght 20	the weekend Tuesday afternoon the end of my holiday
91.2	Write at / on / in.			
4 I like the 5 My 6 Dia 7 Dia 8 Dia 9 Do 10 Let	ot up 8 o'clock se getting up early e morning. sister got married ane and I first met I you go out F you go out F you often go out t's meet 7.30 t starting my new job	May 1979. Friday? Friday evening? the evening? omorrow evening	14 Julia's birthda 15 Do you work 16 I will send you of this month 17 autumr trees. 18 The company 19 I often go awa	here the moment. ay is January. Saturdays? u the money the en n, the leaves fall from the y started 1969. ay the weekend. at the stars in the sky
91.3	Write sentences with	In		
1	<i>now</i> 17.25 →	17.30	It's 17.25 now. The train leaves in	rain leaves at 17.30. five minutes.
2	MONDAY →	THURSDAY		l phone you on Thursday. day
3	14 JUNE →	28 JUNE	It's 14 June today. M	y exam is on 28 June.
4	(1011/2) >	(10) 12 1 (2) 13	It's 3 o'clock now. To Tom	m will be here at 3.30.
	265			
91.4 V	Vrite at / on / in if ne	cessary. (Someti	mes there is no prepos	sition.)
m l alw 'Vill	eaving on Satur eavingn vays feel tired you be at home	ext Saturday the evening.	9 I'm afraid I can Sunday. 10 We went to be	tennis next Sunday n't come to the party ed late last night. ng out alone night

She phones me every Sunday. 12 I won't be out very long. I'll be back to she phones me every Sunday.

UNIT 92 from ... to until since for

from ... to ...: from Monday to Friday - We lived in Canada from 1977 to 1985. - I work from Monday to Friday. Friday Monday You can also say from ... until ...: - We lived in Canada from 1977 until 1985. **until** + the end of a period: until I come back until 10.30 until Friday until 1999 - They're going away tomorrow. They'll be away until Friday. - I went to bed early last night but I wasn't tired. I read a book until 3 a.m. - Wait here until I come back. until Friday You can also say till (= until): - Wait here till I come back. Friday Compare: - 'How long will you be away?' 'Until (or till) Monday.' - 'When are you coming back?' 'On Monday.' **since** + the beginning of a period (from the past to now): since 1958 since 2 o'clock since I arrived since Monday We use **since** after the *present perfect* (have been / have done etc.): John is in hospital. He has been in hospital since Sunday. (= from Sunday to now) since Sunday - Mr and Mrs Kelly have been married since Sunday **1958**. (= from 1958 to now) now It has been raining since I got up. Compare: We lived in Canada from 1977 to 1985. We lived in Canada until 1985. Now we live in England. We came to England in 1985. We have lived in England since 1985. (= from 1985 until now) Use for (not since) + a period of time (three days / ten years etc.): John has been in hospital for three days. (not 'since three days') **for** + a period of time: for ten years for ten minutes for a long time for three days - George stayed with us for three days. - I'm going away for a few weeks. for throo days - They've been married for ten years. Monday Tuesday - Wednesday

2

3

4

5

78

9

N

11

1:

8

9

10

11

13

present perfect + for and since ▶ Units 17-18

UNIT 92 Exercises

92.1 Read the information about these people and complete the sentences. **Use from ... to / until / since.**



I live in Switzerland now. I lived in France before.





I work in a restaurant now. I worked in a hotel before.

I'm a salasman now. I was a teacher before.



	ALCOHOL TO THE PROPERTY OF THE			
1 (Alex / Canada / 1977- 85) 2 (Alex / Canada / → 1985) 3 (Alex / England / 1985→) 4 (Alice / France / → 1986) 5 (Alice / Switzerland / 1986 →) 6 (Carol / a hotel / 1985-88) 7 (Carol / a restaurant / 1988→) 8 (Gerry / a teacher / 1978-84) 9 (Gerry / a salesman / 1984 →)	Alex lived in Canada from 1977 to 1985. Alex lived in Canada Alex has lived in England Alice lived in Alice has lived in Carol worked	. 1985.		
11 (Alex / England) Alex has 12 (Alice / Switzerland) Alice has 13 (Carol / a hotel) Carol wo 14 (Carol / a restaurant) Carol has 15 (Gerry / a teacher) Gerry wa	ed in Canada for eight years. lived in England s lived rked in s worked s s			

before

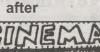


before the film

during



during the film





after the film

- Before the examination everybody was very nervous.
- I went to sleep during the film.
- We were tired after our visit to the museum.

before



before we played

while



while we were playing

after



after we played

- Don't forget to close the windows before you go out.
- I went to sleep while I was watching television.
- They went home after they did the shopping.
- We use during + noun (during the film), while + verb (while I was watching):

- We didn't speak during the meal.

but We didn't speak while we were eating. (not 'during we were eating')

past continuous (I was -ing)

▶ Units 12-13

You can say before -ing and after -ing:

before -ing

- I always have breakfast before going to
 - (= before I go to work)
- Before eating the apple, she washed it very carefully.

(= before she ate the apple)

after -ing

- I started work after reading the newspaper.
- (= after I read the newspaper)
 - After doing the shopping, they went

(= after they did the shopping)

UNIT 93 Exercises

went

93.1 Complete the sentences. Use before / during / after + the best ending from the box.

before during after	+	the concert the course the end	lunch the night	hey went to Australia you cross the road
2 I usually have 3 The film was	e lunc very	h at 1.30, and boring. We left		I go back to work.
5 My aunt and 6 Somebody b 7 A: Are you go B: No, we're	uncle roke a ping h going	lived in London windowome to a restaurant.		
3 George telep 4 She wrote a 5 The students 6 I read the ne 7 I don't eat mi	eak eak hone lot of looke wspar uch	while value of the during of t	you were out she was on holid the lesso I was waiting for the day, but I always	ay. on.
93.3 Complete	e thes	e sentences with	before -ing	
She washed 2 Think careful Think careful	the d lly.'The lly bef	en answer the que	ing it. or Before eati estion.	ng the apple, she washed it.
Mary put on I	her gl k off h	asses nis coat. Then he	got into the car.	his coat.
₩rite sentence	s with			
We were ver	y tired	after		

John left school. Then he worked in a department store for two years.

UNIT 94 in at (places)

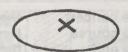
in



in a room
in a shop
in a box



in a garden in a park in a town



in France in Rome in the city centre



in the water in the sea in my coffee

- 'Where's Tom?' In the kitchen. / In the garden. / In London.'
- Milan is in the north of Italy.
- I like swimming in the sea.
- I live in a town but I want to live in the country.

also

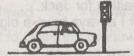
in bed in hospital / in prison in a street in the sky in the world in a newspaper / in a magazine / in a book in a photograph / in a picture in a car (but on a bus / on a train / on a plane) in the middle (of ...)

at at



at the door

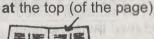




at the traffic lights



at the bus-stop





at the bottom

- Why is that woman standing at the door?
- Turn left at the traffic lights.
- There's a man at the bus stop.
- Please write your name at the top of the page.

also

at home / at work / at school at university
at the station / at the airport at the end (of the street)
at the hairdresser(fs) / at the doctor('s) / at the dentist('s) etc.
at Jane's (house) / at my sister's (house)
at a concert / at a conference / at a party / at a football match etc.

- 'Where's Tom?' 'At work. / At home. / At the doctor's.'
- Do you want me to meet you at the airport?
- There weren't many people at the party.
- My house is at the end of the street.
- Often in or at is possible for a building (hotels, restaurants etc.):
 - We stayed at a nice hotel. or We stayed in a nice hotel.

UNIT 94 Exercises

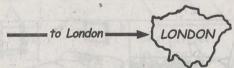
94.1 Complete the sentences for the pictures. Use in or at + one of these: a box the end of the street the gardenhospital a party the sky 1 He's in the garden. 5 The shop is 2 The shoes are 6 The stars are 3 She's 7 She's 4 He's 8 They're 34.2 Complete the sentences. Use in + one of these: this book that field the kitchen this photograph the river Pat is in the kitchen. She's cooking the dinner. 2 Look at those beautiful horses There's too much sugar I can't drink it. 5 How many pages are there? Who is the man? Do you know him? 34.3 Write in or at.

- 'Where's Tina?' 'She's at work.'
- 2 Why didn't the bus-driver stop the bus-stop?
- 3 Go straight on the roundabout and turn right the church.
- 4 There was a big table the middle of the room.
- 5 What is the longest river the world?
- ⁶ Were there many people the concert on Friday?
- My brother is studying mathematics London University.
- 3 'Where does your sister live?' ' Brussels.'
- 9 Did you read about the accident the newspaper?
- Will you be home tomorrow afternoon?
- Munich is a large city the south of Germany.
- 2 Do you work?' 'No, I'm still school.'
- George is coming by train. I'm going to meet him the station.
- Charlie is hospital. He's going to have an operation tomorrow.
- There was a list of names on the notice-board. My name was the bottom of the list.
- usually do my shopping the city centre.

UNIT 95 to in at (places)

to

go / come / return / walk etc. to ...



- We're going to London next week.
- I want to go to Italy.
- We walked from my house to the city centre.
- What time do you go to bed?



- He is walking to the door.
- I went to the airport by car.
- Tom didn't go to work yesterday.
- I'm going to a party tonight.
- Do you want to go to university?
- You must come to our house.

go / come / walk etc. X home

- I'm tired. I'm going home. (not 'to home')
- Did you walk home?

■ in / at (> Unit 94)

be / stay / do something etc. in ...



- Piccadilly Circus is in London.
- My brother lives in Italy.
- The best shops are in the city centre.
- I like reading in bed.

be / stay / do something etc. at ...



- He is standing at the door.
- I met Ann at the airport.
- Ann wasn't at work yesterday.
- I met a lot of people at the party.
- My sister is at university.
- Ann is at her sister's house.

be / stay / do something etc. at home

- I'm not going out this evening,
 I'm staying at home.
- 'Where's Ann?' 'At home.'

arrive in ... and arrive at ...

arrive in a country or town (arrive in Italy / arrive in Paris etc.):

- They arrived in England last week. (not 'arrived to England')

arrive at other places (arrive at the station / arrive at work etc.):

- What time did they arrive at the hotel? (not 'arrive to the hotel')

arrive home (no preposition):

- I was tired when I arrived home.

get to (= arrive)

▶ Unit 51

UNIT 95 Exercises

at home

95.1 Complete these sentences. Use to + one of these:
the bank bed the cinema a concert France hospital
1 Joy was ill yesterday, so she didn't go
95.2 Write to or in.
1 'Where's Jack?'in bed.' 2 I'm going the shop to buy some milk. 3 Tom went the kitchen to make some coffee. 4 'Where's Tom?' 'He's the kitchen making some coffee.' 5 Would you like to go the theatre this evening? 6 I got a postcard from Sue this morning. She's on holiday Switzerland. 7 John lives a small village the south-west of England. 8 What time do you usually go bed? 9 Kevin's sister is very ill. She's hospital. 10 Excuse me, I must go the toilet. 11 The train left Brussels at 7 o'clock and arrived Paris at 9.30. 12 I was tired this morning. I stayed bed until 10 o'clock. 13 Next year we hope to go Canada to visit some friends. 14 Would you like to live another country?
95.3 Write to or at if necessary. (Sometimes there is no preposition.)
1 Joy didn't go
13 What time do you usually arrive

on on



on a table on a plate on the floor etc.



on a wall on a door on the ceiling etc.



on a bus on a train on a plane



on the ground floo on the first floor e

- There are some books on the shelf and some pictures on the wall.
- I met Alice on the bus.
- The office is **on the first floor**. (*not* 'in the first floor')
- There are a lot of apples on the tree. also on a horse / on a bicycle / on a motor-bike

under



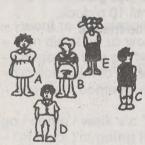
under the table



under a tree

- The cat is **under** the table.
- The girl is standing under a tree.
- I'm wearing a jacket under my coat.

next to (or beside) / between / in front of / behind



A is next to B. or A is beside B.

B is between A and C.

D is in front of B.

E is behind B.

also

A is on the left.

C is on the right.

B is in the middle (of the group).

opposite



The supermarket is opposite the cinema.

above and below



A is above the line.

B is below the line.

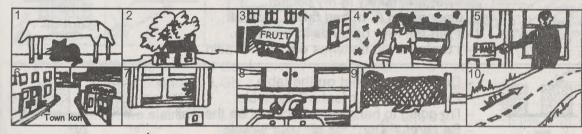


The pictures are above the shelves.

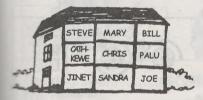
The shelves are below the pictures. 96.1 Complete the sentences. Use on + one of these:

6 It's difficult to carry a lot of things

96.2 Look at the pictures and complete the sentences with a preposition (on / under etc.).



96.3 Nine people live in a block of flats. Use the picture and complete the sentences with **on / next to / between / above / below.**

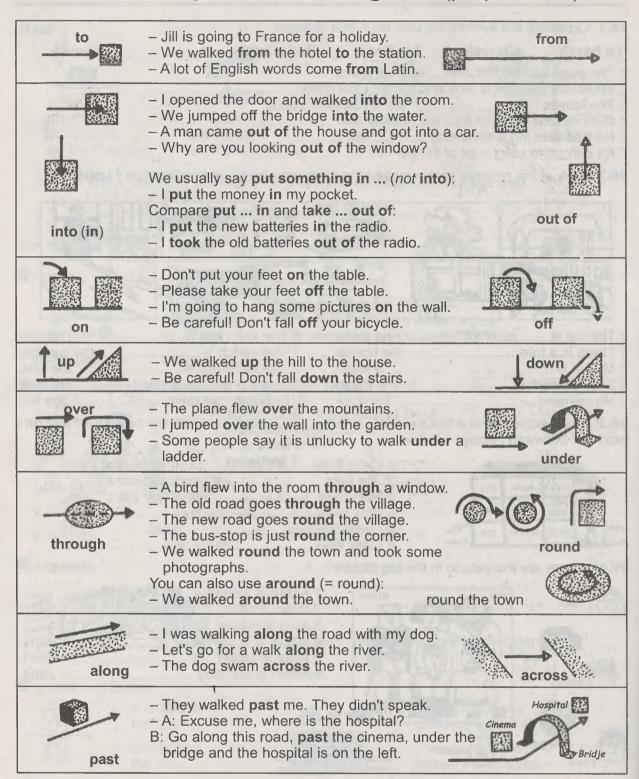


- **36.4** Where are the people in the big picture?

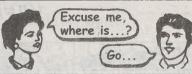


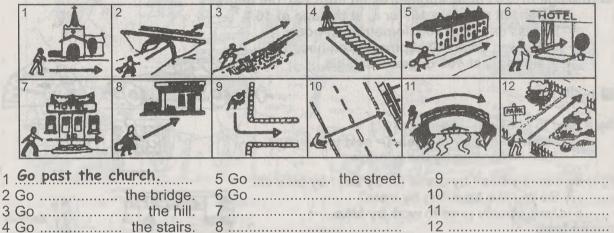
1 Arthur is standing on the left.	
2 Brian is sitting	
3 Alice is sitting	
4 Arthur is standing	Barry.
5 Brian is sitting	
6 Albert is standing	Jane.

UNIT 97 up over through etc. (prepositions)

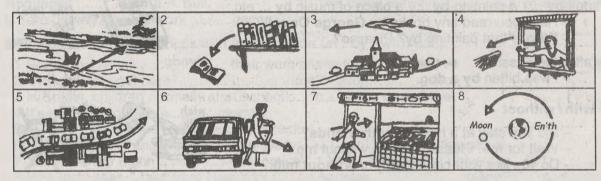


97.1 Somebody asks you the way to a place and you tell him/ her which way to go. Look at the pictures and complete the sentences (**Go** ...).





97.2 Look at the pictures and complete the sentences with a preposition (up / over etc.).



1 The dog swam across the river. 5 They drove the village. 6 A woman got a car. 2 The book fell a shelf. 7 A man walked the shop. 3 The plane flew the village. 8 The Moon travels the Earth. 4 He threw the book the window. 97.3 Put in a preposition (up / off / through etc.). 2 Do you know how to put a film this camera? 3 You can put your coat the back of the chair. 'o 4 She took a key her bag and opened the door. 5 We didn't have a key, so we climbed a window the house. 6 I looked the window and watched the people in the street. 7 We walked the museum and saw a lot of interesting things. 8 In tennis, you have to hit the ball the net.

9 Don't forget to put a stamp the postcard before you post it.

UNIT 98 at by with / without about

(prepositions)

at

at (the age of) 20 / at 90 kilometres an hour / at 100 degrees

- Sarah left school at 16. (or ... at the age of 16.)

He was driving at 90 kilometres an hour.
 (or He was doing 90 kilometres an hour.)

- Water boils at 100 degrees celsius.

by

by = next to / beside (► Unit 96):

- Our house Is by the sea. (= next to the sea)

- John is standing by the window.

(go) by car / by bus / by plane (or by air) / by bike etc.

– Do you like travelling by train?

- Jane usually goes to work by bike.

but on foot:

- She goes to work on foot. (= She walks to work.)

a book by ... / a painting by ... / a piece of music by ... etc.:

- Have you read any books by George Orwell?

- Who is that painting by? Picasso?

by after the passive Unit 20):

- I was bitten by a dog.

with / without

- Did you stay at a hotel or with friends?
- Wait for me. Please don't go without me.
- Do you like your coffee with or without milk?

do something with something (= use something to do something):

- I cut the paper with a pair of scissors.

- She can't read without glasses. (= She needs glasses to read.)

a man with a beard / a woman with glasses / a house with a garden etc.

- Who is that man with the beard?

- I'd like to have a house with a garden.

a mar

a man with a beard

by the window

(the litle)

(the writer)

withaut

about

talk / speak / think / hear / know about ... etc.

- Some people talk about their work all the time.

- I don't know much about cars.

a book / a question / a programme about ... etc.

- Did you see the programme about computers on TV last night?

-10



wich

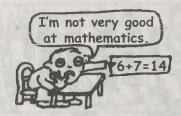
196

UNIT 99

afraid of on holiday etc.

(word + preposition)







■ These words and prepositions (at / in / of etc.) usually go together:

afraid of ...

Are you afraid of dogs?

good a ... / bad at ...

Are you **good at** mathematics? She's very **bad at** writing letters.

interested in ...

George isn't interested in sport.

different from ...

Ann is very different from her sister.

sorry about (something)

Sorry about the noise last night. We had a party.

sorry for (doing something)

I'm sorry for shouting at you. (or I'm sorry I

shouted ...)

married to ...

She's married to an Italian. (= Her husband is Italian.)

fed up with ...

I'm fed up with my job. I want to do something differe (= I've had enough of my job - I want to change.)

nice / kind of somebody to do something

It was very kind of you to help us. Thank you very much.

(be) nice / kind to somebody

They were very **nice to** us. They helped us a lot.

on ... Learn these expressions:

on holiday

on television

on the radio

on the (tele)phone

on fire

on time (= not late)

Jane isn't at work. She's on holiday. We watched the news on television. We listened to the news on the radio. I spoke to Jack on the phone last night. The house is on fire! Call the fire brigade.

'Was the train late?' 'No, it was **on time**.'

After a preposition, a verb ends in -ing (at doing / of buying / for being etc.):

Are you good at 1

I'm sorry for

repairing

things?

I'm fed up with

doing saying

the same thing every day.

She went away without I'm thinking of

say**ıng** buy**ing** goodbye. (= she didn't say goodbye)

a new car.

being late.

198

UNIT 99 Exercises

99.1 Look at the pictures and complete the sentences with a preposition (at / of etc.).



多一种的				
1 He's afraid				
99.2 Put in the right preposition (of / on / wlth etc.).				
1 Sarah isn't interestedin				
99.3 Complete the sentences. Use a preposition + the verb in brackets ().				
Are you good				
In fiese sentences, use without -Ing.				
She went away without saying goodbye. (say) We ran ten kilometres (stop)				

odbye)

s Italian.) g differe ge.)

very much.

UNIT 100

look at... listen to ... etc.

(verb + preposition)

These verbs and prepositions (to / of / at etc.) usually go together:

listen to ...

- Listen to this music. It's beautiful.

talk / speak to somebody (about something)

– Did you talk to Jack about your problem?

- (on the phone) Can I speak to Kay, please?

write (a letter) to somebody

- I never get letters. Nobody writes to me.

but (tele)phone somebody (not phone to ...):

– Can you phone me tomorrow? (not 'phone to me')

belong to ...

- Does this book **belong to** you? (= Is this your book?)

happen to ...

- I put my pen on the table five minutes ago and now

it isn't there. What's happened to it?

wait for ...

Don't go yet. Wait for me.

thank somebody for ...

- Thank you very much for your help.

ask (somebody) for ... (= ask somebody to give you ...)

- A man stopped me and asked me for money.

think about / of ...

He never thinks about (or of) other people.I'm thinking of (or about) buying a new car.

depend on ... – A: Do you like eating in restaurants?

B: Sometimes, yes. It depends on the restaurant.

You can say it depends what / where / how (etc.) with or without on:

– A: Do you want to come out with us?

B: It depends (on) where you're going.

look at ...



- She's looking at her watch.

Look at those flowers. They're beautiful.

- Why are you looking at me like that?

look for ... (= try to find)



- He's lost his key. He's looking for it.

- I'm looking for Ann. Have you seen her?

look after ... (= take care of, keep safe)

 Mary goes to work every day but she has a young child. When she is at work, a friend of hers looks after her child.

- Don't lose this book. Look after it. (= Keep it safe.)

UNIT 100 Exercises

at work, a

100.1 Look at the pictures and complete the sentences with a preposition (to / for etc.).

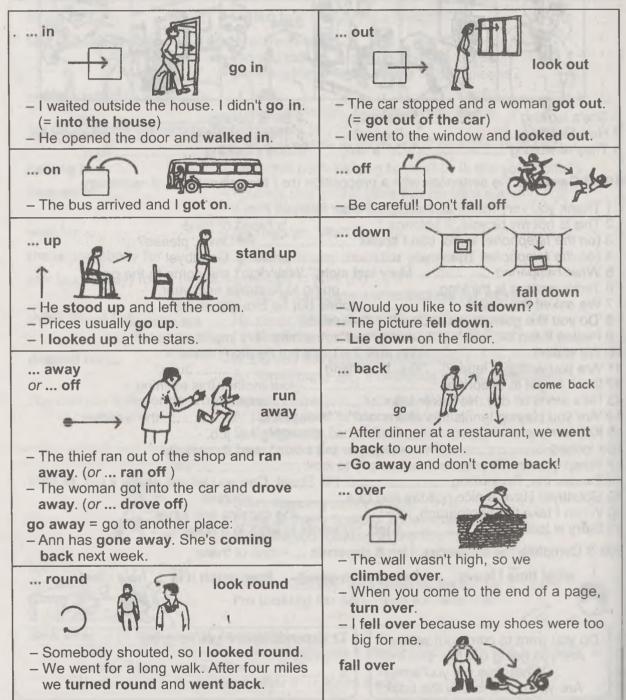
Jane Jane Tom?					
1 She's looking					
100.2 Complete the sertences with a preposition (to / for / about etc.) if necessary.					
1 Thank you very much					
what time I leave where you're going how much it is how I feel					
Do you want to cdme out with us? Are you going out this evening? What time will you arrive? Are you going to buy the book? It depends where you're going It depends It					

UNIT 101

go in fall off run away etc.

(phrasal verbs 1)

A phrasal verb is a verb (go / look / be etc.) + in / out / on etc. ▶ Appendix 5 for other phrasal verbs



UNIT 101 Exercises

hrasal verbs

k out

got out.

d out.

lown

me back

e went

of a page,

s were too

101.1 Look at the pictures and complete the sentences with in / out / up etc.



1 I went to the window and looked	5 I said hello and he turned
2 The door was open, so we went	6 The bus stopped and she got
3 He heard a plane, so he looked	7 There was a free scat, so I sat
4 She got on her bike and rode	8 A car stopped and two men got

101.2 Complete the sentences. Use out / away / back etc.

- 1 'Why is that picture on the floor?' 'It fell .down...'
- 2 Please don't go! Stay here with me.
- 3 She heard a noise behind her, so she looked
- 4 I'm going now to do some shopping. I'll be at 5 o'clock.
- 5 I'm tired. I'm going to lie on the sofa.
- 6 Ann is going on holiday next month. She's going on 5th and coming on 24th.
- 7 When babies try to walk, they often fall
- B Jim is from Canada. He lived in Europe for ten years, but last year he went, to Canada.

101.3 Complete the sentences. Use one of the verbs in the box + on / up / off etc. (These verbs are all in Appendix 5.)

breaks burry	carried slowed	gave speak	got takes	hold wash	+	up on	down off
1 Hurry	.up!We ha						

- 2 I was very tired this morning. I very late.
- 3 This car isn't very good. It a lot.
- 4 It's difficult to hear you. Can you, please?
- 5 'It's time to go.' ' a minute. I'm not ready yet.'
- 6 That was a lovely meal. Now we must
- The train and finally stopped.
- B I like flying but I'm always nervous when the plane
- tried to find a job but I It was impossible.

UNIT 102 put on your shoes put your shoes on (phrasal verbs 2)

Sometimes a phrasal verb (turn off / put on etc.) has an object. For example:

verb turn off

object the light

verb put on

object your shoes



object

You can say:

turn off the light or turn the light off

put on your shoes or put your shoes on

ring up my friend or ring my friend up

but it / them / me / us / you / him / her (pronouns) always go before off / on / up etc.:

put them on (not 'turn off it') (not 'put on them') ring her op (not 'ring up her')

put on / take off

- It was cold, so I put my coat on (or ... I put on my coat.)
- Here's your coat. Put it on.
- Take off that hat! It looks stupid. (or Take that hat off!)

turn on / turn off

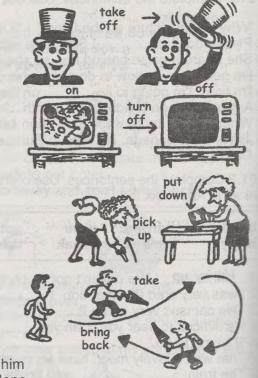
- It was dark, so I turned on the light. (or ... I turned the light on.)
- I don't want to watch this programme. You can turn it off

pick up / put down

- That's my key on the floor. Can you pick it up for me, please?
- She stopped reading and put her book down. (or ... put down her book.)

bring back / take back / give back / put back

- You can take my umbrella but please bring it back.
- I took my new pullover back to the shop. It was too small for me. 1
- John gave me his keys but I gave them back to him
- I read the letter and then put it back in the envelope.



12

13

14

► Appendix 6 for other phrasal verbs + object

UNIT 102 Exercises

102.1 You can write the same sentence in three different ways. Complete the table.

1	I turned off the light.	I turned the light off.	I turned it off.
2	He put on his shirt.	He	He
3	She put on her glasses.	She	them
4	Can you,?	Can you turn the TV on?	Can?
5	She rang up her brother.	She	
6		We took our shoes off.	***************************************
7	They gave back the money.		*
8	She put down her bags.		
9		I switched the engine on.	
10		She filled the form in.	***************************************
11	We put out the fire		

102.2 Co	omplete the s	entences. Use	one of the obj	ects in th	e box +	on / off	up etc.	
object	my book the light	my gloves the radio	my jacket it the photogra	it aph i t	ther ther		on off back up down	
2 That 3 I wan 4 Than 5 I was 6 There 7 My ha 8 It was 9 She I	hat looks stunted to hear the ks for lending reading where was some rands were cos warm, so I to borrowed my	pid! Take ne news, so I to g me your cass n the phone ra noney on the f ld, so I put ook keys and she	urnedsettes. I'll give ang. So I put floor, so I picke	d		and	to you tomorro went to answer	 w. it.
		are in Append		eu at it, a	and put		on the tab	€.
object	your cigar		it it	on down	out over	away round	up	
3 I wan He hi The He That Hried We was	u don't unders it those maga it me so hard se put music is very d risited the sch	stand the word azines. Don't the heknocked loud. Can you nool. One of the name or the fo	u turne teachers sho	wed	You're r	not allowe	and broke in a dictiona ed to smoke her a little they were too b	ry. e.e?
DO A	ou smoke?	no, i gave					two years ag	J.

and but or so because

We use these words (conjunctions) to put two sentences together. They make one longer sentence from two shorter sentences:

sentence A The car stopped. The driver got out. sentence B longer sentence The car stopped and the driver got out.

and / but / or ...

sentence A a	nd / but / or	r sentence B
We stayed at home My sister is married He doesn't like her I bought a newspaper	and and and but	 (we)★ watched television. (she)★ lives in London. she doesn't like him. I didn't read it.
It's a nice house Do you want to play tennis	but	it hasn't got a garden. are you too tired?

The subjects in sentences A and are the same. It is not necessary to say 'we' and 'she' after' and' in sentence

so ... (the result of something):

sentence A	so	sentence B
It was too hot, The water wasn't clean, They like films,	so so	I opened the window. we didn't go swimming. they often go to the cinema.

because ... (the reason for something):

sentence A	because	sentence B
l opened the window	because	it was too hot.
We didn't go swimming	because	the water wasn't clean.
She's hungry	because	she didn't have breakfast.

Because + sentence is also possible at the beginning:

- Because the water wasn't clean, we didn't go swimming.
- You can use *more than one* conjunction to make a longer sentence:
 - It was late and I was tired, so I went to bed.
 - I always enjoy visiting London, but I wouldn't like to live there because it's too big.

UNIT 103 Exercises

He didn't see me.

Don't come back!

103.1 Make longer sentences. Use and / but / or + the sentences in the box.

Did you stay at home?

We watched television.

They don't use it very often. I can't remember his name.

Do you want to get a	taxi?	They took some photographs.
2 I bought a newspape 3 She went to the wind 4 I saw Jack 5 The girl jumped into t 6 Did you go out last ni 7 They walked round th 8 They've got a car 9 I can remember his fa 10 Go away 1 Shall we walk to the h	r but i didn't read it. ow	e sentences in the box.
She was ill. Don't phone me. I walked in. We walked home.	We didn't play tennis. We didn't go swimming. The haven't got a key. She does the same thing al	tt was very hot in the room. She's friendly and interesting. I couldn't sleep. Il the time.
2 The water wasn't ver 3 The door was open 4 Ann didn't go to work 5 I like Carol 6 It was raining 7 There were no buses 5 I got up in the middle 9 I won't be at home th 1 They can't get into th	of the night sevening e house	the room. nming.
	about what you did yesterday.	
and)		ed. as tired.

UNIT 104 When ...

When I went out, it was raining.

This sentence has two parts:

part A when I went out part B it was raining

You can begin with part A or part B:

When I went out, it was raining.

It was raining when I went out.

We write a comma (,) if part A (When ...) is before part B:

When you're tired, don't drive. Don't drive when you're tired.

Ann was very happy when she passed the examination.

When Ann passed the examination, she was very happy.

We do the same in sentences with **before / while / after** Lunit 93):

Always look both ways before you cross the road.

Before you cross the road, always look both ways.

While I was waiting for the bus, it began to rain.

It began to rain while I was waiting for the bus.

{ (He never played tennis again after he broke his leg. After he broke his leg, he never played tennis again.

When I am ... / When I go ... etc. for the future:

I will be in London **next week**.

When I'm in London, I'm going to visit the British Museum.

The time is *future* (**next week**) but we say:
When **I'm** in London,... (not 'When **I will be** in London ...')

We use the *present* (I am / I go etc.) with a *future* meaning after when:

 When I get home this evening, I'm going to have a shower. (not 'When I will get home')

I can't talk to you now. I'll talk to you later when I have more time.

We do the same after before / while / after / until:

Please close the window before you go out.
 (not 'before you will go')

 Julia is going to live in our house while we are away on holiday. (not 'while we will be')

I'll wait here until you come back. (until ➤ Unit 92)



31

45

57

71

81

113

3 M

4 W 5 W

6 D

7 St

UNIT 104 Exercises

104.1 Write sentences. Use when + a sentence from box A + a sentence from box B.

+

i went out
I'm tired
I phoned them
she first met him
she goes to London
the programme ended
they arrived at the hotel

Nkay, I give / I'll give it to you before I go / I'll go.

i switched off the TV
she always stays at the same hotel
she didn't like him very much
there were no rooms free
it was raining.
there was no answer
I like watching TV

B

they arrived at the note	Tine watching IV
2	
4	
6	
104.2 Complete the sentences. Choose	
while I was reading when I explained it to her before he answered the question	
 Were you surprised He thought carefully She understood the problem They went to live in New Zealand Did anybody telephone fell asleep 	I cross the road.
\$34.3 Which is right? Choose the corn	rect form.
m going to bed when I finish / I'll fine come / We'll come and see you hen I see / I'll see you tomorrow, I ould you like something to drink be an't go out yet. Wait until the rain goes going away soon. I'm / I'll be yet.	when we're / we'll be in England again. I show / I'll show you the photographs. Defore you go / you'll go to bed? Stops / will stop. Very sad when she leaves / she'll leave. While I'm / I'll be there, I hope to see lots of old



You want to travel from Paris to Geneva. You are not sure which train you will travel on – the 7.35 or the 10.34.

If you leave at 7.35, you will arrive at 11.08. If you leave at 10.34, you will arrive at 14.03.

■ If can be at the beginning of the sentence or in the middle:

If ..., ... (if at the beginning)

If you speak slowly,
If we don't hurry,
If you're hungry,
If the phone rings,
If the phone rings,
If can understand you.
We'll be late.
have something to eat.
can you answer it, please?

DEPART ARRIVE
07.35 11.08
10.34 14.03
12.00 15.35
15.30 19.00

... if ... (if in the middle)

I can understand you if you speak slowly.

We'll be late **if** we don't hurry. I'm going to the concert **if** I can get a ticket.

Do you mind if I smoke? (= Is it okay if I smoke?)

In conversation, we often use the **if**-part of the sentence alone:

- 'Are you going to the concert?' 'Yes, if I can get a ticket.'

- if you see ... / if I am ... etc. for the future. For example:
 - If you see Ann this evening, can you ask her to phone me?

We say: **if** you **see** (*not* 'if you will see'), **if** I **am** (*not* 'if I will be'). Use the present (*not* 'will') after **if**:

- If I'm late this evening, don't wait for me. (not 'If I will be late')
- What shall we do if it rains? (not 'if it will rain')
- If I don't feel well tomorrow, I'll stay at home.
- if and when

if I go out = it is possible that I will go out, but I'm not sure:

- A: Are you going out later?
 - B: Perhaps. If I go out, I'll close the window.

when I go out = I'm going out (for sure):

- A: Are you going out later?
 - B: Yes, I am. When I go out, I'll close the window.
- When I get home this evening, I'm going to have a shower.
- If I'm late this evening, don't wait for me. (not 'When I'm late')
- We're going to play tennis if it doesn't rain. (not 'when it doesn't')



UNIT 105 Exercises

105.1 Make sentences beginning with **If** ... Choose from the boxes.

if + you come home late tonight I don't feel well tomorrow you have any problems

ARRJVE . 11.08 . 14.03 . 15.35 . 19.00

(not

please come in quietly I'm not going to work we'll be late
I'll try to help you
I'll fly home on Sunday

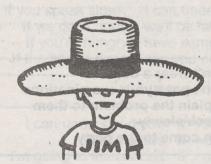
you have any problems	Thirty home on bunday
1 If we don't hurry, we'll be late. 2 If I can 3 If 4 5 105.2 Make sentences with if in the middle (if	
It will be nice You'll be cold What are you going to do I'm sure they'll understand	you don't wear a coat you don't pass your examinations you explain the problem to them you speak elswly you can come to the party
1 I can understand you if you speak slowly. 2 It 3 4 5	
105.3 Choose the correct form of the verb.	
well tomorrow, beta / l'Inght) If the weather is / will be nice tomorrow, we can will be difficult to find a hotel if we arrive / we'll the alarm will ring if there is / will be a fire. Im / l'il be surprised if they get / they'll get married you go / Will you go to the party if they invited.	go to the beach. <u>arrive</u> late.
25.4 Put in if or when .	
'm late this evening, don't wait for me. I don't see you tomorrow, I'll phone you. you mind I close the window? I get up in the morning, I usually drink a cupe something to eat you don't eat now, is still at school he leaves school, he careful! you aren't careful. you'll fall.	you'll be hungry later.

UNIT 106

a person who ... a thing that / which ...

(relative clauses 1)





Jim was wearing **a hat that** was too big for him.

or

Jim was wearing **a hat which** was too big for him.

who ... is for people (not things):

A thief is a person who steals things. (not 'a person which ...')
Do you know anybody who can play the piano?

I know somebody who knows you.

The people who work in the office are very friendly.

that ... is for things (and sometimes people):

An aeroplane is **a machine** that flies.

Jack lives in **a house** that is 500 years old.

That is also possible for people ('Do you know anybody that can play the piano?'), but it is usually better to say who.

which ... is only for things:

An aeroplane is a machine which flies. (not 'a machine who ...')

Jack lives in a house which is 500 years old.

Do not use which for people:

Do you know the man who was playing the piano at the party?
 (not 'the man which ...')

UNIT 106 Exercises

106.1 Write sentences about the people in box A: **A** ... **is a person who** ... Choose an ending from box B to complete your sentence. Use a dictionary if necessary.

a thief a butcher a musician a patient a photographer	a butcher a fool a genius a liar
	4

lages.

uages.

or him.

for him.

g for him.

m, but it is

takes photographs
sells meat
is ill in hospital
steals things
is very stupid

B
is very intelligent
plays a musical instrument
doesn't tell the truth
looks after your teeth

1 A thief is person who steals things. 2 A butcher is a person who 3 A musician is a person. 4 A patient is 5	
106.2 Make one sentence from two sentences. Use who. 1 A man phoned. He didn't say his name. The man who phoned didn't say his name. 2 A woman opened the door. She was wearing a yellow dress. The woman. 3 Some people live next door to us. They are very nice. The people. 4 A policeman stopped our car. He wasn't very friendly. The policeman.	a yellow dress
5 A boy broke the window. He ran away. The boy	

1 I met a woman who can speak six languages.	
2 What's the name of the man lives next door?	
3 What's the name of the river goes through the town?	
Everybody went to the party enjoyed it very much.	
5 Do you know anybody wants to buy a car?	
Where is the picture was on the wall?	
She always asks me questions are difficult to answer	er.
I have a friend is very good at repairing cars.	
A coffee-maker is a machine makes coffee.	
don't like people never stop talking.	
Have you seen the money was on the table?	
Why does he always wear clothes are too small for h	im'

UNIT 107

the people we met the hotel you stayed at

(relative clauses 2)

The man is carrying a box. It's very heavy.

2 sentences

The box (that) he is carrying is very heavy. - 1 sentence

Ann took some photographs.) Have you seen them?

2 sentences

Have you seen the photographs (that) Ann took?

1 sentence -



234

In these sentences, you do not need 'that'. You do not need that / who / which when it is the object:

subject The man Ann You We	verb was carrying took wanted met	object a box. some photographs. the book. some people.	 → the box (that) the man was carrying → the photographs (that) Ann took → the book (that) you wanted → the people (who) we met
----------------------------	-----------------------------------	--	---

- Did you find the book (that) you wanted?
- The people (who) we met were very nice.
- Everything (that) I told you was true.
- Sometimes there is a *preposition* (**to / in / at** etc.) after the verb:

Jill is talking to a man. → Do you know the man Jill is talking to?

I slept in a bed. → The bed I slept in was very hard.

You stayed at a hotel. → What's the name of the hotel you stayed at?

You can also say (a place) where

- What's the name of the hotel where we stayed? (= the hotel we stayed at)

Note that we say:

- Do you know the man Jill is talking to Dim? (not ...talking to him?')
- The film we saw ★was very good. (not 'The film we saw it ...')
- Remember that you need who / that / which when it is the subject Unit 106):

subject verb

I met a woman who can speak Jim was wearing a hat that

six languages. too big for him. was

214

UNIT 107 Exercises

h when it

arrying

d at?

107.1 Make one sentence from two.	
TOTAL WARE ONE SCHLENCE HOME TWO.	
Have you seen the photographs Ann to 2 (You lost a key. Did you find it?) Did you fi 3 (Jill is wearing a jacket. I like it.) I like the . 4 (I gave you some money. Where is it?) W 5 (She told us a story. I didn't believe it.)	re they?)
107.2 Complete the sentences. Use the infor	
2 (I'm wearing shoes) The shoes	are not very comfortable of the didn't come
107.3 Complete the sentences. Use this info	
we looked at a map you were looking they live in a house you spoke to a w	
2 What's the name of the woman you	at is too small for then
Did you enjoy the party5 The chair	wasn't very comfortable wasn't very clea
Did you enjoy the party5 The chair	wasn't very comfortable wasn't very clea
Did you enjoy the party	wasn't very comfortable wasn't very clea

APPENDIX 1

List of irregular verbs (► Unit 36)

infinitive	past	past
	simple	participle
be (am/is/are)	was/were	been
beat	beat	beaten
become	became	become
begin	began	begun
bite	bit	bitten
blow	blew	blown
break	broke	broken
bring	brought	brought
build	built	built
buy	bought	bought
catch	caught	caught
choose	chose	chosen
come	came	come
cost	cost	cost
cut	cut	cut
do	did	done
draw	drew	drawn
drink	drank	drunk
drive	drove	driven
eat	ate	eaten
fall	fell	fallen
feel	felt	felt
fight	fought	fought
find	found	found
fly	flew	flown
forget	forgot	forgotten
get	got	got
give	gave	given
go	went	gone
grow	grew	grown
hang	hung	hung
have	had	had
hear	heard	heard
hide	hid	hidden
hit	hit	hit
hold	held	held
hurt	hurt	hurt
keep	kept	kept
know	knew	known
leave	left	left
lend	lent	lent

	To see and	
infinitive	past	past
	simple	participle
let	let	let
lie	lay	lain
light	lit	lit
lose	lost	lost
make	made	made
mean	meant	meant
meet	met	met
The state of the s	paid	paid
pay	put	put
read /ri:d/	read /red/	read /red/
ride	rode	ridden
	A STATE OF THE PARTY OF THE PAR	rung
ring	rang	rung
rise		run
run	ran said	said
say		seen
see	saw	sold
sell	sold	
send	sent	sent
shine	shone	shone
shoot	shot	shot
show	showed	shown
shut	shut	shut
sing	sang	sung
sit	sat	sat
sleep	slept	slept
speak	spoke	spoken
spend	spen*	spent
stand	stood	stood
steal	stole	stolen
swim	swam	swum
take	took	taken
teach	taught	taught
tear	tore	torn
tell	told	told
think	thought	thought
throw	threw	thrown
understand	understood	understood
wake	woke	woken
wear	wore	worn
win	won	won
write	wrote	written

These verbs can be regular (-ed) or irregular (-t):

infinitive	past simple / past participle	infinitive	past simple / past participle
burn	burned or burnt	dream	dreamed or dreamt
learn	learned or learnt	smell	smelted or smelt

APPENDIX 2 Irregular verbs In groups

1	cost cut hit hurt	\rightarrow cut \rightarrow hit		$\begin{array}{ccc} \text{let} & \rightarrow \text{let} \\ \text{put} & \rightarrow \text{put} \\ \text{shut} & \rightarrow \text{shut} \end{array}$
2	lend send sper build	$d \rightarrow second$ $\rightarrow specific$	nd ent	lose → lost shoot → shot get → got light → lit sit → sat
\$ 13 \$ 20 8 20 8 20 8 20 8 20 8 20 8 20 8 20 8		n → bu nk → lea eli → sm	rnt	keep → kept sleep → slept
bin bin	yeni yeni yeni yeni	feel leave meet dream mean	\rightarrow m \rightarrow dr	ft
3		bring buy fight think catch teach	$\begin{array}{c} \rightarrow \text{bc} \\ \rightarrow \text{fo} \\ \rightarrow \text{th} \\ \rightarrow \text{ca} \end{array}$	ought / bro:t / ought / bo:t / ught / bo:t / ought / θo:t / ought / ko:t / ught / to:t /
4	100	sell tell	\rightarrow so \rightarrow to	
No. 4	a Vi	find have hear hold read say	\rightarrow he \rightarrow re	
	1	pay make	\rightarrow pa \rightarrow m	
	star	erstand	\rightarrow st	ood

AV.	ring	→ swam → rang → sang	swum rung sung
5	begin drink swim	→ began → drank	begun drunk
181	wear tear	→ wore → tore	worn torn
	show	→ showed	shown
	fly	→ flew → drew	flown
60	throw	→ threw	thrown
330	know	→knew	known
13	grow	→ grew	grown
4	blow	→blew	blown
	take	took	taken
	see	\rightarrow saw	seen
	give	→ gave	given
	forget	→ forgot	forgotten
3	eat fall	→ ate → fell	eaten fallen
3	oot	-> etc	anta-
	hide	→ hid	hidden
	bite	→ bit	bitten
	beat	→ beat	beaten
1	write	→ wrote	written
	rise	→ rose	risen
	drive ride	→ drove → rode	driven ridden
2	11931 0000		
	wake	→ wake	woken
100	steal	→ stole	stolen
1	speak	→ spoke	spoken
	choose	→ broke → chose	broken

APPENDIX 3 Short forms (he's / i'd / don't etc.)

3.1 In spoken English, we usually pronounce 'I am' as one word. The short form (I'm) is a way of writing this:

l am → l'm - I'm feeling tired this morning. - 'Do you like this jacket?" 'Yes, it's very nice.' it is → it's - 'Where are your Mends?' 'They've gone home.' they have → they've

When we write short forms, we use' (an apostrophe): he is → he's you **>** vou've $l \times m \rightarrow l'm$

she Xill → she'll

3.2 We use these short forms with I / he / she etc.:

am → 'ı	n I'm						
is \rightarrow 's	6	he's	she's	it's			F631
are → 'ı	re				we're	you're	they're
have → 'v	ve l've				we've	you've	they've
has → 's	5	he's	she's	it's			
had → 'e	d I'd	he'd	she'd		we'd	you'd	they'd
will → "I	1 111	he'll	she'll	it'll	we'll	you'll	they'll
would \rightarrow 'c	d I'd	he'd	she'd		we'd	you'd	they'd

- I've got blue eyes.

We'll probably go out this evening;
It's 10 o'clock. You're late again.

's = is or has:

- She's going out this evening, (she's going = she is going)

- She's gone out. (she's gone = she has gone)

'd = would or had:

- A: What would you like to eat?

B: I'd like a salad, please. (I'd like = I would like)

- I told the police that I'd lost my passport. (I'd lost - I had lost)

Do *not* use short forms if the verb is at the end of the sentence ▶ Unit 37):

- 'Are you tired?' 'Yes, I am.' (not 'Yes, I'm'.)

- 3.3 We use short forms with I / you / he / she / it etc. But we use short forms (especially 's) with other words too:
 - Who's your favourite singer? (= who is)

- What's the time? (= what is)

- There's a big tree in the garden. (= there is)

- My sister's working in London. (- my sister is working)

Jack's gone ovt. (=. Jack has gone out.)

- What colour's your car? (= What colour is your car?)

etc.)

a way of

they're they've they'd they'll

they'd

pecially's m

 $\mathbf{not} \rightarrow \mathbf{n't}:$

		is not)	don't	(= do not)	can't	(= cannot)
aren't	(=	are not)	doesn't	(= does not)	couldn't	(= could not)
wasn't	(=	was not)	didn't	(= did not)	won't	(= will not)
weren't	(=	were not)			wouldn't	(= would not)
hasn't	(=	has not)				(= should not)
haven't	(=	have not)				(= must not)
hadn't	(=	had not)				(= need not)

- We went to her house but she wasn't at home.
- 'Where's John?' 'I don't know. I haven't seen him.'
- You work all the time. You **shouldn't** work so hard.
- I won't be here tomorrow. (= I will not)

3.5 's (apostrophe + s)

's can mean different things:

- a) 's = is or has (see section 2 of this appendix)
- b) **let's = let us** (► Unit 48)
 - The weather is nice. Let's go out. (= Let us go out.)
- c) Mary's camera (= her camera) / my brother's car (= his car) / the manager's office (= his / her office) etc. (► Unit 58)

Compare:

- Mary's camera was very expensive. (Mary's camera = her camera)
- Mary's a very good photographer. (Mary's = Mary is)
- Mary's got a new camera. (Mary's got = Mary has got)

APPENDIX 4 Spelling

4.1 -s and -es (birds / watches etc.)

```
      noun + s (plural)
      (▶ Unit 60):
      place → places
      question → questions

      verb + s (he / she / it -s)
      (▶ Unit 5):
      live → lives
      remember → remembers
```

but

```
+ es after -s, -sh, -ch or -x:

bus → buses pass → passes address → addresses
dish → dishes wash → washes finish → finishes
watch → watches teach → teaches sandwich → sandwiches
box → boxes

also

potato → potatoes do → does
tomato → tomatoes go → goes
```

```
-f<sup>-</sup>/ -fe → -ves:
shelf → shelves knife → knives but roof → roofs
```

4.2 -y \rightarrow -i- (baby \rightarrow babies / study \rightarrow studied etc.)

```
-y → -ies:

study → studies (not 'studys') family → families (not 'familys')

story → stories city → cities baby → babies

tly → tries marry → marries try → flies

-y → -ied (> Unit 9):

study → studied (not 'studyed')

try → tried marry → married copy → copied

-y → -ier / iest (> Units 81 and 84):

easy → easier / easies (not 'easyer / easyest')

happy → happier / happies lucky → luckie / luckiest

heavy → heavier / heavies funny → funnie / funniest

-y → -ily (> Unit 80):

easy → easily (not 'easyly')

happy → happily lucky → luckily heavy → heavily
```

```
y does not change to i if the ending is -ay / -ey / -oy / -uy:
holiday → holidays (not 'holidaies')
enjoy → enjoys / enjoyed stay → stays / stayed buy → buys key → keys
but
say → said pay → paid (irregular verbs)
```

Ses

nes

keys

Verbs that end in -e (make / write / drive etc.):
-e → xing:
make → making write → writing come → coming dance → dancing

Verbs that end in -ie (die / lie / tie): -ie → -ying: lie → lying die → dying

4.4 stop \rightarrow stopped (p \rightarrow pp) / big \rightarrow bigger (g \rightarrow gg) etc.

vowel letters (V): a c i o u

consonant letters (C): bcdfgklmnprst

Sometimes a word ends in a vowel + a consonant (V + C) – for example, stop, big. Before -ing / -ed / -er / -est, the consonant at the end (-p / -g / -t etc.) is 'doubled' (-> -pp- / -gg- / -tt-etc). For example:

	V -	+ C				
stop	STO	P	р	рр	stopping	stopped
run	RU	N	n	nn	ru nn ing	
get	GE	T	t	tt	getting	200
swim	SWI	M	m	mm	swimmin	- T 70 17
big	BI	G	g	gg	bi gg er	biggest
hot	НО	T	t	tt	hotter	hottest
thin	THI	N	n	nn	thi nn er	thinnest

This does not happen

a) if the word ends in two consonant letters (C + C):

	C.	+ C		
help	HEL	P	helping	helped
work	WOR	K	working	worked
fast	FAS	T	faster	fa st est

b) if the word ends in two vowel letters + a consonant letter (V + V + C):

	V +	- \/ +	- C	19 8 9	
need	NE	E	D	needing	needed
wait	WA	1	T	waiting	waited
cheap	. CH E	A	P	cheaper	cheapest

c) in longer words (two syllables or more) if the last part of the word is not stressed:

```
stress
                      HAP -pen
                                      → happening / happened (not 'happenned')
  happen =
                      VIS -it
     visit =
                                       → visiting / visited
remember =
                   re- MEM -ber
                                       → remembering / remembered
but prefer =
                 pre- FER (stress at the end)
                                                      → preferring / preferred
                  be- GIN (stress at the end)
    begin =
                                                      → beginning
```

d) if the word ends in -y or -w. (At the end of words, y and w are not consonants.) enjoy enjoying / enjoyed snow / snowing / snowed few / fewer / fewest

APPENDIX 5 Phrasal verbs (look out / take off etc.)

This is a list of some important phrasal verbs (► Unit 101):

out look out / watch out = be careful:

- Look out! There's a car coming.



Hold on

a moment!

on

come on = be quick / hurry:

- Come on! Everybody is waiting for you

hold on = wait

- Can you **hold on** a moment, please? (= can you wait?)

carry on = continue

- Don't stop working. Carry on. (= Continue working.)

- A: Excuse me, where is the station please?

B: Carry on along this road and turn right at the traffic lights.

(= Continue along this road)

also go on / walk on / drive on = continue going etc.:

- Don't stop here. Drive on. (= Continue driving.)

off

take off = leave the ground (for planes).

- The plane took off 20 minutes late.



take off

up

wake up = stop sleeping:

 I often wake up in the middle of the night.

get up = get out of bed:

What time do you usually get up in the morning?

grow up = become an adult:

– What does your son want to do when he grows up?

speak up = speak* more loudly:

- I can't hear you. Can you speak up a bit?

wash up = wash the dishes, plates etc. after a meal:

After we finished eating, we washed up.

hurry up = go more quickly:

- Hurry up! We haven't got much time.

give up = stop trying:

- I know it's difficult but don't give up. Keep trying.

down slow down = go more slowly:

- You're driving too fast. Slow down.

break down = stop working (for cars / machines etc.)

- I'm sorry I'm late. The car broke down.







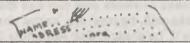




APPENDIX 6 Phrasal verbs + object (ring up my friend / put out a fire etc.)

This is a list of some important phrasal verbs + object (▶ Unit 102):

in fill in (a form) (= complete a form): - Can you fill in this form, please?



out

put out (a fire / a cigarette):

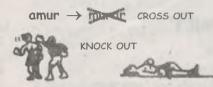
- The fireman arrived and quickly put the fire out.

cross out (a mistake / a word etc.):

- If you make a mistake, cross it out.

knock out = make unconscious

- A stone fell on my head and knocked me out



on/off

switch on / off (a light, TV etc.) = turn pn/off:

- Don't forget to switch off the light when you leave.

on

try on (clothes) = put on clothes to see if they fit you:

- (in a shop) I like that jacket. I'm going to try it on.

up

ring up = telephone (also ring - without 'up'):

Can you ring me up tomorrow? (or ... ring me tomorrow?)

give up = stop something that you do:

Tom gave up smoking three years ago. (= he stopped smoking)

- I started learning Italian but I gave it up.

look up (a word) (in a dictionary):

- I didn't know the meaning of the word, so I looked it up in a dictionary.

turn up = make louder (TV, radio, music etc.):

- Can you turn the radio up? I can't hear it.

down

knock down (a building) = demolish

- They are going to build a new school and knock down the old one.

turn down = make more quiet (TV, radio, music etc.):

- The radio is too loud. Can you turn it down, please?



KNOCK DOWN

over

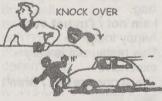
knock over (a cup / a glass / a person etc.):

- Be careful with your cup. Don't knock it over.

also (be) knocked down / knocked over (by a car etc.):

- There was an accident at the end of the road. A man was knocked over (or knocked down) by a car. (be) run over (by a car etc.):

 A lot of animals are run over on busy roads. (These sentences are passive ► Unit 20.)



KNOCK DOWN / OVER

round

show (somebody) **round** = take somebody on a tour of a place:

- We visited a factory last week. The manager showed us round

away

throw away (rubbish etc., things you don't want):

These apples are bad. Throw them away.

- Don't throw away that picture. I want it.



Key

In many of these answers you can use the full form of the verb ('I am, it is, she will, he has' etc. or the short form of the verb ('I'm, it's, she'll, he's' etc.). See Appendix 3 for short forms.

Unit 1

1.1

- 2 they're
- 3 she's not / she isn't
- 4 it's
- 5 I'm not
- 6 you're not / you aren't
- 8 I am
- 9 you are
- 10 they are not
- 11 it is not
- 12 she is

1.2

- 2 am / 'm
- 3 is
- 4 are
- 5 is
- 6 is / 's
- 7 am / 'm
- 8 is
- 9 are
- 10 is ... are
- 11 am / 'm ... is

1.3

- 2 My bed is very comfortable.
- 3 Your cigarettes **are** in your bag.
- 4 I am not / I'm not very happy today.
- 5 This restaurant **is** very expensive.
- 6 The shops are not / aren't open today.
- 7 Mr Kelly's daughter **is** six years old.
- 8 The houses in this **street are** very old.
- 9 The examination is not / isn't difficult.
- 10 Those flowers are very beautiful.

1.4

- 3 I'm / I am hungry. or I'm not / I am not hungry.
- 4 It's / It is warm today. or It isn't / It's not warm today.
- 5 Rome isn't / is not in Spain.
- 6 I'm / I am afraid of dogs.

 or I'm not / I am not afraid of dogs.
- 7 My hands are cold. or My hands aren't / are not cold.
- 8 Canada is a very big country.
- 9 The Amazon isn't / is not in Africa.
- 10 Diamonds aren't / are not cheap.
- 11 Motor-racing is a dangerous sport.
- 12 Cats aren't / are not big animals.

Unit 2

2.1

- 2 Are your parents at home? 3 Is this hotel expensive?
- 4 Are you interested in art?
- 5 Are the shops open today? 6 Is the park open today?

2.2

- 2 Where is/Where's my key?
- 3 Where are my socks?
- 4 How old is your father?
- 5 What colour are his eyes?
- 6 Why is John angry w(th me?
- 7 How much are these shoes?
- 8 Who is / Who's your favourite . actor?
- 9 Why are you always late?

2.3

- 3 Are you British?
- 4 Where are you from?
- 5 How old are you?
- 6 Are you a student?
- 7 Is your wife a teacher?
- 8 Where is / Where's she from?
- 9 What is / What's her name? 10 How old is she?

2.4

- 3 **Yes**, it is. *or* No, it isn't / **No**, it's not.
- 4 Yes, I am. or No, I'm not.
- 5 **Yes**, I am. or No, I'm not.
- 6 **Yes**, it is. *or* No, it isn't./ **No**, it's not.
- 7 **Yes**, they are. *or* No, they aren't./ No, they're not.
- 8 **Yes**, I am. or No, I'm not.
- 9 **Yes**, he is. or No, he isn't./ No, he's not.
- 10 **Yes**. it is. *or* No. it isn't./ **No**, it's not.

Unit 3

3.1

- 2 are building
- 3 is swimming
- 4 are standing
- 5 is coming
- 6 am cooking
- 7 is having

- 3 I'm / I am sitting on a chair. or I'm not / I am not sitting on a chair.
- 4 I'm / I am eating. or I'm not / I am not eating.
- 5 It's / It is raining. or It's not / It is not raining.
- 6 I'm / I am learning English.
- 7 I'm / I am listening to the radio. or I'm not / I am not listening to the radio.

acher? e's she

her name?

lo, it isn't /

No, I'm not. No, I'm not. No. it isn't./

or No, they re not. No, I'm not. No, he not. No. It isn't./

ng on a not / I am a chair. or I'm t eating. ing. or It's t raining. irning English ening to the n not / I am to the radio

8 The sun is shining. or The sun isn't / is not shining.

9 I'm / I am wearing shoes. or I'm not / I am not wearing shoes.

10 I'm / I am smoking a cigarette. or I'm not / I am not smoking a cigarette.

11 I'm not / I an. not reading a newspaper.

3.3

2 In A the man is lying on the floor. In he is standing on the chair.

3 In A it's raining, In 8 the sun is shining.

4 In A the woman is writing (a letter). In she is reading a

5 In A the man is running. In 8 he is riding a bicycle. In 8 he is cycling.

6 In A the woman is driving (the car). In 8 the man is driving (the car).

Unit 4

2 Where is / Where's he going? 3 Why are they laughing?

4 What is / What's he eating? 5 What are they looking at?

6 Why is she crying?

2 What are they doing?

3 What am I doing?

- What is your wife doing?

6 Where are those children going?

7 Where is the girl with long hair going?

3 Where is the man on the bicycle going?

4.3

2 Are the children playing?

3 What are you doing?

4 What is / What's Tom doing?

5 Is it raining?

6 Is that clock working? 7 Are you writing a letter?

8 Why are you running?

4.4

2 Yes, I am. or No, I'm not.

3 Yes, I am. or No, I'm not.

4 Yes, it is. or No, it isn't./ No, it's not.

5 Yes, I am. or No, I'm not.

6 Yes, I am. or No, I'm not.

Yes, it is. or No, it isn't./ No, it's not.

8 Yes, she is. or No, she isn't. / No, she's not.

Unit 5

5.1

2 repairs 3 watches	8 does 9 thinks
4 listens	10 kisses
5 loves	11 buys
6 has	12 goes
7 pushes	

5.2

2 smokes	8 costs
3 have	9 cost
4 like go	10 teaches
5 boils	11 meet
6 open	12 washes
7 closes	

5.3

1 George usually drinks coffee in the morning. (example answer)! sometimes drink coffee in the morning

2 Bob and Ann often read newspapers. George never reads newspapers. (example answer) I often read newspapers.

3 Bob and Ann sometimes get up before 7 o'clock. George always gets up before 7 o'clock. (example answer) I never get up before 7 o'clock.

Unit 6

6.1

2 Jack doesn't play the piano very well.

3 You don't know the answer.

4 She doesn't work very hard. 5 They don't do the same thing

every day.

3 They don't know.

4 She doesn't love him.

5 They don't speak English.

6 I want it.

7 She wants them.

8 He doesn't live in Rome.

6.3

1 Carol doesn't like classical music. I like / I don't like classical music.

2 Bill and Rose don't like boxing. Carol likes boxing.

I like / I don't like boxing. 3 Bill and Rose don't like horror films. Carol likes horror films.

I like / I don't like horror films.

4 Bill and Rose like dogs. Carol doesn't like dogs. I like/I don't like dogs.

6.4

2 don't sell

3 doesn't drive

4 don't go

5 doesn't wash

6 doesn't cost

7 doesn't play

8 don't know

9 doesn't wear 10 don't sec

Unit 7

7.1

2 Do you play tennis?

3 Does Ann play tennis?

4 Do you know the answer?

5 Do you like hot weather?

6 Does your father smoke?

7 Do you do exercises every morning?

8 Do your friends speak English?

9 Do you want to be famous?

11 Where do you live?

12 How often do you watch TV?

13 Where do you have lunch?

14 What time do you get up?

15 How often do you go to the cinema?

16 How do you go to work?

7.2

2 do you speak

3 do you do

4 does your sister do

5 Does she smoke

6 does it rain

7 Do you like

8 do they (usually) go

9 do you (usually) have

10 does it cost

2 Yes, I do. or No, I don't.

3 Yes, I do. or No, I don't.

4 Yes, she does, or No, she doesn't.

5 Yes. I do. or No, I don't.

6 Yes, it does. or No, it doesn't.

Unit8

8.1

2 Yes, she does. No, she isn't. She's / She is playing the piano.

3 Yes, he does. Yes, he is. He's / He is cleaning a window.

4 Yes, they do. No, they aren't./ No. they're not. They're / They are watching television.

8.2

2 don't 6 do

3 are 7 does

4 does 8 am / 'm

5 don't ... 9 doesn't

is / 's

8.3

4 is singing

5 wants

6 do you read

7 're sitting / are sitting

8 don't understand/do not understand

9 'm reading / am reading

10 does she finish

11 'm not listening / am not listening

12 doesn't usually drive / does not usually drive ... walks

Unit 9

9.1

2 cleaned

3 smoked

4 started ...finished

5 happened

6 wanted

7 lived

8 enjoyed ... stayed

9 rained

10 opened

11 played

12 died

9.2

11 bought 2 ate 3 paid 12 knew

4 made 13 stcod

5 gave 6 left

14 took 15 did

7 saw

16 put

8 went

17 told

9 heard

18 lost

10 found

19 thought 20 spoke

9.3

2 got up early. 3 lost his keys

4 I wrote a letter to Jane.

5 met her friends

6 I read two newspapers

7 they came to my house.

8 We went to the cinema

9 Tom had a shower

10 they bought a new car.

11 I ate an orange.

12 We did our shopping

13 Ann took (some) photographs.

14 We left home at 8.30

If possible, check your sentences with someone who speaks English.

Unit 10

10.1

2 didn't work 4 didn't have 3 didn't go 5 didn't do

10.2

2 Did you enjoy the party?

3 Did you have a good holiday?

6

2345

11

4 Did you get up early this

morning?

5 Did you sleep well last night?

10.3

2 I got up before 7.30. or I didn't get up before 7.30.

3 I had a shower, or I didn't

have a shower.

4 I bought a magazine, or I didn't buy a magazine.

5 I spoke English, or I didn't

speak English. 6 I did an examination,

didn't do an examination. 7 I ate meat, or I didn't eat

meat.

8 I went to bed before 10,30. or I didn't go to bed before 10.30.

10.4

- 2 What time did Harry arrive?
- 3 Who did you see?
- 4 What did they want?
- 5 What time did the meeting / it finish?
- 6 Why did Pat/she go home early?
- 7 What did you have for dinner?
- 8 How much did it cost?

10.5

- 2 waited ... didn't come.
- 3 did you buy
- 4 saw ... didn't speak
- 5 Did it rain
- 6 did you do

Unit 11

11.1

e who

t have

holiday?

ast night?

orli

orl

or I didn't

nation.

idn't eat

re 10.30

d before

OF !

7,30.

fine.

r I didn't

this

't do

- 2 Carol and Jack were at the cinema / in the cinema.
- 3 Sue was at the station.
- 4 Mr and Mrs Baker were in a restaurant / at a restaurant.
- 5 Ben was on the beach / on a beach / at the seaside / by the sea.
- 6 (example answer) I was at home.

11.2

2 is was	8 is / 's
3 am / 'm	9 was
4 was	10 were
5 were	11 was
6 are / 're	12 are
7 were	were

11.3

- 2 was
- 3 weren't ... were
- 4 wasn't ... was
- 5 weren't ... was
- 6 Were ... wasn't ... was

11.4

- 2 Were they friendly?
- 3 Was it difficult?

- 4 Were they expensive?
- 5 Was it interesting?

Unit 12

12.1

- 2 Carol and Jack were at the cinema. They were watching a film.
- 3 Tom was in his car. He was driving.
- 4 Catherine was at the station. She was waiting for a train.
- 5 Mr and Mrs Mason were in the park. They were walking.
- 6 (example answer) I was in the park. I was playing tennis.

12.2

- 2 she was swimming.
- 3 she was reading a newspaper.
- 4 she was cooking.
- 5 she was having breakfast.
- 6 she was listening to music.

12.3

- 2 What were you doing at I I o'clock?
- 3 What was she wearing vesterday?
- 4 Was it raining when you went out?
- 5 Where were you living in 1981?

12.4

- 2 He was smoking a pipe.
- 3 He was carrying a bag.
- 4 He wasn't carrying an umbrella.
- 5 He wasn't going to the dentist.
- 6 He was wearing a hat.

Unit 13

13.1

1 Tom was walking down the street.

- He saw Jack. He said hello.
- 2 They were sitting in the garden.
 It started to rain.
 - They went into the house.
- 3 Carol was painting the room. She fell off the ladder. She broke her arm.

13.2

- 4 was working
- 5 got ... washed ... dressed ... had
- 6 came ... was having
- 7 met ... was wearing
- 8 broke ... were playing
- 9 were waiting ... arrived
- 10 got ... was shining ... went
- 11 wasn't driving/was not driving ... happened
- 12 didn't go
- 13 did you do
- 14 were you doing ... was watching

Unit 14

14.1

- 2 he's got
- 3 they've got
- 4 she hasn't got
- 5 it's got
- 6 I haven't got

14.2*

- 2 Have you got a passport?
- 3 Has your father got a car?
- 4 Has Carol got many friends?
- 5 Have Mr and Mrs Lewis got any children?
- 6 How much money have you
- 7 What kind of car has John got?

14.3*****

3 Ann hasn't got a camera. 4 I've got a camera. *or* I haven't got a camera.

- 5 I've got a bicycle or I haven't got a bicycle.
- 6 Jim hasn't got a bicycle.
- 7 Ann hasn't got black hair.
- 8 Ann has got two brothers. 9 Jim hasn't got black hair.
- 10 Ann has got a bicycle.
- 11 Jim has got a sister.
- 12 (example answers) I've got two sisters. / I haven't got eny brothers or sisters.
- In these exercises you can also use 'do / does ... have' ('Do you have a passport?' 'Ann doesn't have a camera.' etc.') ► Units 6-7

14.4

- 3 has got / 's got
- 4 have got
- 5 has got
- 6 haven't got
- 7 haven't got
- 8 have got / 've got
- 9 hasn't got
- 10 has got / 's got
- 11 has got / 's got
- 12 haven't got
- 13 hasn't got
- 14 have got / 've got

Unit 15

15.1

- 2 She has closed the door.
- 3 They have gone to bed.
- 4 It has stopped raining.
- 5 He has had a bath.
- 6 The picture has fallen down.

15.2

- 2 have bought
- 3 has gone
- 4 Have you done
- 5 have lost
- 6 has broken
- 7 Have you painted
- 8 has taken
- 9 has she gone
- 10 have read

Unit 16

16.1

- 3 Have you ever been to Australia?
- 4 Have you ever lost your passport?
- 5 Have you ever slept in a park?
- 6 Have you ever eaten Chinese food?
- 7 Have you ever been to New York?
- 8 Have you ever won a lot of money?
- 9 Have you ever broken your lea?

16.2

- 3 She has never been to Australia. (example answer) I have never been to Australia.
- 4 She has lost her passport once. (example answer) I have lost my passport twice.
- 5 She has never slept in a park. (example answer) I have never slept in a park.
- 6 She has eaten Chinese food a few times. (example answer) I have eaten Chinese food many times..
- 7 She has been to New York twice. (example answer) I have been to New York three times.
- 8 She has never won a lot of money. (example answer) I have never won a lot of money.
- 9 She has.broken her leg once. (example answer) I have broken my leg twice.

16.3

- 2 She has travelled to many places.
- 3 She has done a lot of interesting things.
- 4 She has written ten books...
- 5 She has met a lot of interesting people.
- 6 She has been married five times

16.4

2 gone	6 been
3 been been	7 been
4 been	8 gone
5 gone	

Unit 17

17.1

- 3 have been
- 4 has been
- 5 have lived / have been living
- 6 have known
- 7 have been
- 8 has worked / has been working
- 9 have been
- 10 has had

17.2

- 3 How long have they been in Brazil?
- 4 How long has she been learning Italian?
- 5 How long has he lived in Germany? *or* How long has he been living ...?
- 6 How long has it been raining?
- 7 How long has he been a teacher?
- 8 How long have you known her?
- 9 How long have you had a motor-bike?
- 10 How long have they been married?
- 11 How long has he worked in London? or How long has he been working ...?

- 2 He has been in hospital since Sunday.
- 3 They have been watching television for two hours.
- 4 It has been raining all day.
- 5 She has lived in Wales all her life.
- 6 He has had a beard for five years.

Unit 18

18.1

3for ... since 6 since 4 for 7 since 5 for 8 for

18.2

If possible, check your answers with someone who speaks English.

18.3

3 for 20 years 4 20 years ago 5 ten minutes ago 6 two months ago

7 for two months

8 for a long time

9 an hour ago

18.4

2 He has been here since Thursday.

3 It's been raining for an hour.

4 I've known her for two years.

5 I've had my camera since 1985.

6 They've been married for six months.

7 She has been studying medicine for three years.

18.5

If possible, check your sentences with someone who speaks English.

Unit 19

19.1

SITTE

31 76

5se

2 Yes, I saw him ten minutes

Yes, we painted it last week.

4 Yes, she went (to France) on Friday.

5 Yes, they had dinner at 7

Yes, he started (it) yesterday.

19.2

2 What time did he go out?

3 When did you see her?

4 When did she leave her job?

19.3

3 right

4 wrong - I finished my work at 2 o'clock.

5 wrong – When did you finish your work?

6 wrong - George left school three years ago.

7 right

8 wrong - Napoleon Bonaparte died in 1821.

9 right

10 wrong - I didn't see you at the party on Saturday.

11 wrong - The weather was very bad last week

19.4

4 played

5 did you go

6 Have you ever been

7 have washed

8 washed

9 didn't like

10 has visited

11 has worked

12 went ... stayed

Unit 20

20.1

3 Glass is made from sand.

4 Stamps are sold in a post office.

5 Football is played in most countries.

6 This machine is not used very often. / This machine isn't used very often.

7 What language is spoken in Ethiopia?

8 What is this machine used for?

20.2

3 This room was painted last month.

4 These houses were built about 50 years ago.

5 Ann's bicycle was stolen last week.

6 Three people were injured in the accident.

7 When was this church built?

8 When was television invented?

9 How was the window broken?

10 Was anybody injured in the accident?

11 Why was the letter sent to the wrong address?

20.3

3 is made

4 were damaged

5 are spoken

6 were built

7 are shown

8 was made

9 was stolen ... was found

10 was invented

11 is paid

20.4

2 Sally was born in Birmingham.

3 Her parents were born in Ireland.

4 I was born in ...

5 My mother was born in ...

Unit 21

21.1

2 Dick is going to the cinema.

3 Tom and Sue are going to a

4 Barbara is meeting Dave.

5 George is going on holiday.

21.2

If possible, check your entences with someone who speaks English. Here are some example answers:

3-6 I'm having a party on Friday.

I'm going away at the weekend.
I'm staying at home this evening.
I'm playing tennis tomorrow.

21.3

- 2 Are you working next week?
- 3 What are you doing tomorrow evening?
- 4 What time are Bob and Sue coming?
- 5 When is Liz going on holiday?

21.4

- 3 I'm meeting my friends this evening.
- 4 Tom isn't coming to the party on Thursday.
- 5 The English course finishes on 10 May.
- 6 My sister is getting married next December.
- 7 My train leaves at 8.45.
- 8 I'm not going to London tomorrow.
- 9 What time does the train leave?
- 10 What time are you leaving tomorrow?
- 11 When are they getting married?
- 12 When does the next English course begin?

Unit 22

22.1

- 2 He's going to have/take a bath;
- 3 They're going to buy a (new) car.
- 4 He's going to have/drink a cup of coffee.
- 5 They're going to paint/ decorate the room.
- 6 She's going to play the piano.

22.2

- 2 I'm (not) going to get up before 6.30.
- 3 I'm (not) going to have breakfast.
- 4 I'm (not) going to watch TV in the morning.
- 5 I'm (not) going meal.
- 6 I'm (not) going to ride a bicycle.

22.3

- 2 When are you going to visit me again?
- 3 What time is Tom going to phone you tonight?
- 4 How long are your friends going to stay here?
- 5 What time are you going to get up tomorrow?

22.4

- 2 I'm going to walk.
- 3 He's going to study
- 4 It's going to rain.
- 5 I'm going to eat
- 6 We're going to give
- 7 I'm going to lie

Unit 23

23.1

- 2 she'll be in Munich.
- 3 she'll be in Athens.
- 4 she'll be in Vienna.
- 5 she'll be in Rome.
- 4 You won't find it.

23.2

- 2 I'll be at home.
- 3 I'll be in bed.
- 4 I'll probably be in the town centre.
- 5 I don't know where I'll be.

23.3

- 2 I won't forget.
- 3 It won't happen.

4 Yoy won't find it.

23.4

- 2 I think Jack will win the game.
- 3 I think Sue will like her present.
- 4 I think the weather will be nice tomorrow.
- 5 I don't think they'll get married.
- 6 I don't think I'll be at home this evening.

23.5

- 2 are you doing
- 3 I'm going
- 4 he'll lend
- 5 I'm going out
- 6 will phone
- 7 She's working

Unit 24

24.1

- 2 I'll send 5 I'll do
- 3 I'll eat 6 I'll sit
- 4 I'll stay 7 I'll show

24.2

- 2 I think I'll have or I think I'll buy
- 3 I don't think I'll play
- 4 I don't think I'll buy

24.3

- 3 wrong I'll do it later.
- 4 wrong Okay, I'll drive.
- 5 right
- 6 wrong I'll lend you some

24.4

- 2 Shall I turn off the televises
- 3 Shall I make some sandwiches?
- 4 Shall I turn on the light?

- 2 where shall we go
- 3 what shall we buy
- 4 who shall we invite

Unit 25

25.1

- 2 Can you ski?
- 3 Can you play chess?
- 4 Can you drive?
- 5 Can you run ten kilometres?
- 6 Can you ride a horse?
- 8 I can ski. or I can't ski.
- 9 I can play chess. *or* I can't play chess.
- 10 I can drive. or I can't drive.
- 11 I can run ten kilometres. or I can't run ten kilometres.
- 12 I can ride a horse. *or* I can't ride a horse.

25.2

- 2 can speak
- 3 can't hear
- 4 can't find
- 5 can see

25.3

- 2 couldn't understand
- 3 can't see
- 4 couldn't eat
- 5 can't go
- 6 couldn't go

25.4

think

drive.

ou some

- 2 Can you pass (me) the salt, please? or Could you pass
- 3 Can you turn off the radio, please? *or* Could you turn
- Can I borrow your pen? or Could I borrow ...? or Can you lend me your pen? or Could you lend me ...?
- 5 Can I use your phone, please? or Could I use ...?
- address (please)? or Could you give me ...? or Can I have your address (please)? or Could I have ...?

Unit 26

26.1

- 2 I may / might see Tom tomorrow.
- 3 Kay may / might be late.
- 4 It may / might snow today.
- 5 I may / might wear my new jeans.
- 6 They may / might not come.
- 7 I may / might not go out tonight.

26.2

- 2 I may / might go to a restaurant.
- 3 I may / might see her tomorrow / this evening.
- 4 I may / might buy some shoes.
- 5 I may / might go away.
- 6 I may / might phone him this evening / tomorrow.
- 7 I may / might have fish.

26.3

If possible, check your answers with someone who speaks English. Here are some example answers:

- 3 I might get up early.
- 4 I may go to the cinema.
- 5 I'm not going to have a shower.
- 6 I'm going to buy a newspaper.
- 7 I'm not going to play tennis.
- 8 I might make a telephone call.

Unit 27

27.1

- 2 must hurry
- 3 must meet
- 4 must phone
- 5 must learn
- 6 must read
- 7 must buy

- 8 must wash
- 9 must go
- 10must help
- 11must win
- 12must be

27.2

- 2 must
- 3 had to
- 4 must
- 5 must
- 6 had to
- 7 must
- 8 had to
- 9 had to
- 10 had to

27.3

- 3 mustn't lose
- 4 needn't hurry
- 5 needn't take
- 6 mustn't tell
- 7 needn't buy
- 8 needn't wait
- 9 mustn't stick.

Unit 28

28.1

- 2 should go
- 3 should clean
- 4 should visit
- 5 should wear
- 6 should read

28.2

- 2 You shouldn't work so hard.
- 3 He shouldn't eat so much.
- 4 She shouldn't watch TV so often.
- 5 You shouldn't talk so much.

- 2 Do you think I should buy a new camera?
- 3 Do you think I should get a new job?
- 4 Do you think I should do an English course?
- 5 Do you think I should learn to drive?

28.4

- 2 I think you should sell it.
- 3 I think they should have a holiday.
- 4 I think he should go to the doctor.
- 5 I think she should go to university.
- 7 I don't think they should get
- 8 I don't think we should stay
- 9 I don't think you should go to work today.

28.5

If possible, check your sentences with someone who speaks English. Here are some example answers:

- 1 I think everybody should learn a foreign language.
- 2 I think I should learn to drive.
- 3 I don't think the police should carry guns.

Unit 29

29.1

- 2 have to do
- 3 has to read
- 4 have to speak
- 5 has to travel

29.2

- 2 have to get
- 3 have to go
- 4 had to buy
- 5 have to change
- 6 had to answer

29.3

- 2 Why did they have to leave early?
- 3 How much (money) did you have to pay?
- 4 Why do you have to go (home) now?
- 5 How long did he have to wait?

6 Why does she have to work this evening?

29.4

- 2 (doesn't) have to wait.
- 3 didn't have to get up so
- 4 don't have to decide now.
- 5 doesn't have to work so hard.

29.5

- 3 has to
- 4 had to
- 5 have to
- 6 must or have to
- 7 have to

Unit 30

30.1

- 2 Would you like an apple?
- 3 Would you like a biscuit?
- 4 Would you like some cheese?
- 5 Would you like a sandwich?
- 6 Would you like some cake?

30.2

- 2 Would you like to go to a concert on Sunday?
- 3 Would you like to play tennis tomorrow?
- 4 Would you like to dance?

30.3

- 2 Would you like
- 3 Do you like
- 4 would you like
- 5 Would you like
- 6 I like
- 7 I'd like
- 8 Would you like

Unit 31

31.1

- 2 Are there any books in the box?
- 3 Is there a man in the box?
- 4 Is there any money in the box?

- 5 Are there any clothes in the box?
- 6 Is there a key in the box?

31.2

- 2 There isn't a swimming-pool in Dunford. / There is no swimming-pool ...
- 3 There is a hospital in Dunford.
- 4 There are two cinemas in Dunford.
- 5 There isn't a university in Dunford. / There is no
- university ...
 6 There aren't any big hotels in Dunford. / There are no big hotels ...
- 7 There is a cathedral in Dunford, / There's a cathedral ...

31.3

- 2 There is / There's
- 3 is there
- 4 There are
- 5 There isn't
- 6 are there
- 7 There aren't
- 8 Is there

31.4

- 2 There are 50 states in the USA.
- 3 There are 15 players in a rugby team.
- 4 There are nine planets in the solar system.

3:

5

- 5 There are 26 letters in the English alphabet.
- 6 There are 30 days in September.

- 2 It
- 3 There
- 4 There ... it
- 5 there ... there
- 6 There ... it

Unit 32	33.4	11 are 13 ls
32.1	2 It's nice to sec you again	12 do 14 Are
	3 It's impossible / difficult to	35.2
2 There was a carpet 3 There were some pictures	sleep 4 It's dangerous / stupid to go	3 don't
4 There was a small table	out alone	4 am not / 'm not
5 There were some flowers	5 It's difficult / impossible to	5 isn't
6 There were some books	Save	6 don't 7 aren't
7 There was an armchair 8 There was a sofa	6 It's stupid to wear 7 It's easy to meet people.	8 doesn't
State of the state		9 don't
32.2	Unit 34	10 am not / 'm not
3 There was 4 Was there	34.1	35.3
5 There weren't	3 phone Jack	3 were 9 was
6 there wasn't	4 phone Jack	4 did 10 was
7 Were there	5 to phone Jack	5 was 11 did
8 There wasn't	6 to phone Jack	6 were 12 have
9 There was	7 phone Jack	7 Has 13 Did
10 there weren't	8 to phone Jack	8 did 14 Have
32.3	9 phone Jack	35.4
3 There are	10 phone Jack	3 is 8 has
4 There was	34.2	4 have 9 were
5 There is	3 get	5 was 10 have
6 There has been	4 going	6 are 11 was
7 there was	5 watch	7 Have 12 is
8 There will be	6 raining	Unit 20
9 there were there are	7 driving	Unit 36
Unit 33	8 listening 9 eat	36.1
	10 doing staying	
33.1	11 wear	3 got 10 bought 4 thought 11 heard
3 lt's / It is 8 ls it	12 waiting	5 paid 12 cost
4 Is it 9 is it		6 sat 13 caught
5 ls it 10 lt's / lt is	34.3	7 left 14 lost
6 is it Is it 11 It's / It is	4 to go 11 studying	8 built 15 understood
7 It's / It is 12 It's / It is	5 going go 12 hear	9 put
33.2	6 help 13 lie 7 see 14 to lie	36.2
2 How far is it from New York	8 to leave 15 to go	2 began begun
to Washington?	9 rain 16 go	3 ate eaten
3 How far is it from your house	10 to have	4 drank drunk
to the station?		5 gave given
How far is it from the hotel	Unit 35	6 ran run
to the beach?	A MEDINA	7 spoke spoken 8 wrote written
33.3	35.1	9 came come
3 It 7 There It	3 are 7 do	10 drove driven
4 There 8 There	4 Does 8 Are	11 took taken
5 t it 9 lt	5 Do 9 Does	12 went gone
5 It 100 THEOLETING TOTAL	6 ls 10 does	13knew known

the

pool

otels in o big

n the

ts in the

Key

,,,,			
	arned	37.5 2 Yes, I have. or No, I haven't. 3 Yes, it is. or No, it isn't. 4 Yes, I do. or No, I don't. 5 Yes, I am. or No, I m not. 6 Yes, I do. or No, I don't. 7 Yes, I will. or No, I won t 8 Yes, I have. or No, I haver't 9 Yes, I did. or No, I didn't. 10 Yes, I was. or No. I wasn't. Unit 38	2 So am I. 3 So have I. 4 So do I. 5 So will I. 6 So was I. 7 Neit'ier can I. 8 Neither did I. 9 Neither have I. 10 Neither am I. 11 Neither do I. 39.3 1 So am I. 2 So can I. or I can't (ride a bicycle). 3 Neither am I. or I am
36.4		20.4	(tired).
2 met 3 woken 4 swam 5 spoken 6 cost	7 driven 8 sold 9 told 10 flew	38.1 2 Do you 5 Didn't you 3 Did he 6 Do I 4 Doesn't she	4 So do I. or I don't (like dancing). 5 Neither do I. or I do. or I like cold weather. 6 So did I. or I didn't (sleep well last night).
Unit 37		3 Have you 4 Was she 5 Can't you 6 Didn't you	7 Neither have I. or I have (been to India). 8 Neither do I. or I do. or I often go to the cinema.
2 do 3 did 4 does	5 do 6 does	7 Is it 8 Aren't you 9 Did you 10 Does she	 9 So am I. or I'm not (going out tomorrow evening). 10 Neither have I. or I have (a headache). or I've got a
37.2 2 doesn't 3 didn't 4 don't	5 doesn't 6 didn't	11 Won't you 12 Isn't it 38.3	headache. 11 Neither did I. or I did. or I watched TV last night. 12 So do I. or I don't (need a holiday).
37.3		2 aren't they 5 don't you	Unit 40
2 have 3 can	7 were 8 will	3 wasn't she 6 doesn't he 4 haven't you 7 won't you 38.4	Unit 40 40.1
4 are 5 is 6 was	9 does 10 has	2 are you 5 do you 3 isn't she 6 didn't she	3 They aren't married. / They're not married 4 I haven't had dinner. 5 It isn't cold today. / It's not
37.4 2 isn't 3 won't 4 hasn't		4 can't you 7 was it Unit 39	cold today. 6 I can't sec you. 7 We weren't late. 8 I'm not going out.
5 wasn't 6 didn't 7 am not / 'r	m not	39.1 2 either 5 either 3 too 6 either	9 She hasn't gone out. 10 I won't be late tonight. 11 It wasn't expensive.
8 don't	II HOL	4 too 7 too	12 You shouldn't go.

40.2

- 3 I don't like fish.
- 4 She doesn't smoke.
- 5 Don't look at me!
- 6 I didn't get up early.
- They didn't understand.
- 8 Don't phone me tonight.
- 9 I didn't do the shopping.
- 10 He doesn't live near here.
- 11 It didn't rain yesterday.
- 12 They didn't do the work.

40.3

can't (ride a

or I am

don't (like

orldo. orl

didn't (sleep

orldo, orl

I'm not (going

or I have

or I did. or I

I don't (need a

or I've got a

e cinema.

evening).

last night.

married. /

married.

ed dinner. today. / It's not

you.

t late.

ng out.

gone out.

xpensive.

dn't go.

late tonight.

or I have

- 3 She can't swim.
- 4 They aren't on holiday. /
- They're not on holiday.
- 5 He doesn't speak German.
- 6 I didn't enjoy the film.
- 7 It isn't important. / It's not important.
- 8 We didn't watch TV.
- 9 They weren't angry.
- 10 He won't be pleased.
- 11 I didn't go to the bank.
- 12 She hasn't got a camera.
- 13 Don't open the door.
- 14 I couldn't hear them.

40.4

- 3 am not / 'm not
- 4 can't
- 5 doesn't
- 6 isn't / 's not
- 7 don't ... haven't
- 8 didn't / couldn't ... wasn't.
- 9 Don't
- 10 didn't
- 11 haven't
- 12 didn't
- 13 won't / can't
- 14 didn't
- 15 couldn't
- 16 weren't

Unit 41

41.1

- Were you late this morning?
- 4 Has Ann got a key?
- 5 Will you be here tomorrow?
- Is Tom going out this evening?
- Have you finished your work?
- Do you like your job?

- 9 Does Pam live near the city centre?
- 10 Did you enjoy your holiday?
- 11 Did you have a shower this mornina?

41.2

- 2 Can / Do you play the piano?
- 3 Are you married?
- 4 Do you live in a city?
- 5 Have you (ever) been to India?
- 6 Did you go out last night?
- 7 Do you like chocolate?
- 8 Did you watch TV yesterday?
- 9 Did you sleep well last night?

41.3

- 3 Why is it important?
- 4 What are you reading?
- 5 What time did she go home?
- 6 When are they going away?
- 7 What kind of music do you
- 8 Where did you meet him?
- 9 How long is he going to stay here?
- 10 Where have they gone?
- 11 Why can't you come (to the party)?
- 12 How did you break the window?
- 13 How much money do you need?
- 14 When did she do her driving
- 15 Why don't you like her?
- 16 How often does it rain?

Unit 42

42.1

- 3 Who is/Who's coming?
- 4 Who took your umbrella?
- 5 What made you angry?
- 6 Who wants to see me?

- 7 Who told you about the accident?
- 8 What went wrong?

42.2

- 3 What are you reading?
- 4 Who did you see?
- 5 What do you want?
- 6 Who did you phone?
- 7 What are you going to cook?
- 8 What did you buy?

42.3

- 3 What have they lost?
- 4 Who cleaned the kitchen?
- 5 Who did you ask for money?
- 6 Who asked you for money?
- 7 What happened last night?
- 8 What did Jack buy?
- 9 Who telephoned you yesterday!
- 10 Who did you telephone yesterday?
- 11 Who knows the answer?
- 12 What woke you up this morning?
- 13 Who has/Who's got your pen?
- 14 What did they see?
- 15 Who saw the accident?
- 16 Who did the washing-up?
- 17 What did she do?
- 18 What does it mean?/What does this word mean?

Unit 43

- 3 Who are you waiting for?
- 4 Who did she dance with?
- 5 What is he interested in?
- 6 Who did you have dinner with?
- 7 What are they looking for?
- 8 Who was George with?
- 9 Who did you give the money to?
- 10 What are you looking at?
- 11 What were they talking about?
- 12 Who did you dream about?
- 13 What was he afraid of?

Key

- 14 Which restaurant are they going to?
- 15 Who did she speak to?
- 16 Which hotel did you stay at?

43.2

- 2 What is the food like?
- 3 What is the weather like?
- 4 What are the people like?
- 5 What is your city like?
- 6 What are the shops like?
- 7 What are the schools like?
- 8 What are the TV programmes like?

43.3

- 2 What was the film like?
- 3 What was the flight like?
- 4 What was the concert like?
- 5 What were the lessons like?
- 6 What was the hotel like?

Unit 44

44.1

- 2 Which restaurant are you going to?
- 3 Which newspaper does she read?
- 4 Which language are you going to learn?
- 5 Which places did they visit?
- 6 Which bus are you waiting for?

44.2

- 3 Which 8 Who 4 What 9 What 5 What 10 What
- 6 Which 11 Which
- 7 Which 12 What

44.3

- 2 What time did you get up?
- 3 How old are you?
- 4 What colour is the door?
- 5 How often do you watch TV?
- 6 What size are these shoes?
- 7 How far is it from Paris to Moscow? / How many miles is it from Paris to Moscow?

- 8 How big is your room?
- 9 What kind of music do you like? / What sort of music do you like?
- 10 How far can you run? /
 How many kilometres can
 you run?
- 11 What size is your pullover?
- 12 How tall are you?
- 13 What day is it (today)?
- 14 How heavy is this box?
- 15 How fast can this plane fly?
- 16 What kind of films do you like? / What sort of films do you like?

Unit 45

45.1

- 2 How long does it take by car from Rome to Milan?
- 3 How long does it take by bus from the city centre to the airport?
- 4 How long does it take by plane from Cairo to London?
- 5 How long does it take by taxi from the station to the hotel?
- 6 How long does it take by train from Paris to Geneva?
- 7 How long does it take by boat from Dover to Ostend?
- 8 How long does it take by bicycle from your house to your work?

45.2

- 2 It takes 50 minutes.
- 3 It takes an hour / one hour.
- 4 It takes an hour and a quarter / an hour and 15 minutes / one and a quarter hours.
- 5 It takes an hour and 25 minutes.
- 6 It takes an hour and ten minutes.

45.3

- 2 How long did it take you to walk to the station?
- 3 How long did it take them to clean the house?

- 4 How long did it take you to learn to swim?
- 5 How long did it take him to find an apartment?

45.4

- 2 It took us an hour to walk home.
- 3 It took me a long time to learn to drive.
- 4 It took them all day to repathe car.
- 5 If possible, check this sentence with someone wl speaks English.

45.5

If possible, check your sentences with someone wh speaks English. Here are so example answers:

- 2 It takes me about five minutes to have a shower.
- 3 It takes two hours to fly to London from Italy.
- 4 It takes six years to study to be a doctor in Britain.
- 5 It takes (me) about ten minutes to walk from my house to the nearest shop.

Unit 46

46.1

- 2 Excuse me, can you tell m where the museum is?
- 3 Excuse me, can you tell m where the information cent is?
- 4 Excuse me, can you tell m where the nearest bank is?

- 1 I don't know where he is.
- 2 I don't know when they're /
- they are leaving.
 3 I don't know why he was angry.
- 4 I don't know where they're they are from.
- 5 I don't know how old the house is.

6 I don't know when he'll / he will be here.

46.3

- 2 I don't know where she works.
- 3 Do you know where they live?
- 4 Do you remember what he said?
- 5 Do you know what time the concert begins?
- 6 I don't know why they left early.
- 7 I don't remember how the accident happened.

46.4

- 2 Do you know if / whether they are married?
- 3 Do you know if/whether she likes her job?
- 4 Do you know if/whether George will be here tomorrow?
- 5 Do you know if / whether he passed his examination?

46.5

- 2 Do you know where Ann is?
- 3 Do you know if / whether Pat is working today?
- 4 Do you know what time they start work?
- 5 Do you know if / whether they work on Sundays?
- 6 Do you know why they were so nervous?
- 7 Do you know where Stella went?
- 8 Do you know if / whether the shops are open tomorrow?

Unit 47

47.1

- 3 to do
- 4 to swim
- 5 to work ... talking

- 6 cleaning
- 7 to go
- 8 going
- 9 to send
- 10 to be
- 11 reading
- 12 travelling ... flying / to fly
- 13 to come
- 14 to see
- 15 working
- 16 to speak
- 17 to talk
- 18 crying/to cry
- 19 visiting

47.2

- 2 Do you like writing letters?
- 3 Do you like travelling by train?
- 4 Do you like visiting museums?
- 5 Do you like eating in restaurants?
- 'Do you like to write / to travel' etc. is possible in these sentences, especially in American English.
- 7–10. If possible, check your sentences with someone who speaks English. Here are some example answers:
 - 7 I don't like writing letters.
 - 8 I like travelling by train.
- 9 I don't mind visiting museums.
- 10 I like eating in restaurants.

47.3

- 3 living
- 4 to do
- 5 to Help
- 6 travelling ('to travel' is possible, especially in American English)
- 7 teaching ('to teach' is possible, especially in American English)
- 8 to lose
- 9 to leave ('leaving' is not possible after 'would prefer')
- 10 losing ('to lose' is possible, especially in American English)

Unit 48

48.1

- 3 I want you to listen carefully.
- 4 I don't want you to be angry.
- 5 Do you want me to wait for you?
- 6 I don't want you to phone me tonight.
- 7 I want you to meet Sarah.
- 8 Do you want me to make some coffee?

48.2

- 2 The doctor advised me to stay in bed.
- 3 I asked her to phone me.
- 4 Tom persuaded me to go to the party.
- 5 They let me use their phone, (not 'to use')
- 6 Ann's mother taught her to play the piano.

48.3

- 3 The man told me to get into the car.
- 4 I told the children to be quiet.
- 5 She told me not to lose the key.
- 6 Tom told me to phone him later.
- 7 I told Tom not to say anything.

- 2 to get
- 3 to explain
- 4 sleep
- 5 to hear
- 6 walk
- 7 to arrive
- 8 cry
- 9 to know
- 10 clean / to clean
- 11 wait
- 12 to do

Key

Unit 49

49.1

- 2 Yes, he told me that he was married.
- 3 Yes, she said that she could play tennis.
- 4 Yes, they told me that they were from Italy.
- 5 Yes, she told me that she had (got) a job.
- 6 Yes, they said that they would help us.
- 7 Yes, he said that he was going to India.
- 8 Yes, she told me that she worked in a bank.
- 9 Yes, they told me that they lived in London.
- 10 Yes, she said that she was studying art.

49.2

- 2 She said that she would phone later.
- 3 He said that he didn't want to study.
- 4 He said that he hadn't been to London.
- 5 She said that she had lost her key.
- 6 She said that she was learning German.
- 7 He said that he couldn't drive a car.
- 8 She said that she knew the answer.
- 9 She said that she wasn't going out.
- 10 He said that he had (got) a lot of problems.

You can say all these sentences without 'that'. For example (sentence 3):

He said (that) he didn't want to study. (with or without 'that')

49.3

3 told	7 tell
4 told	8 told
5 said	9 said
6 say	10 tell

Unit 50

50.1

- 2 I went to the bank to get some money.
- 3 I went to the supermarket to buy some food.
- 4 I went to the post office to get some stamps.
- 5 I went to the chemist to get some medicine.
- 6 I went to the cafe to meet a friend.

50.2

- 2 to read the newspaper.
- 3 to open this door?
- 4 to clean it.
- 5 to let some fresh air into the room.
- 6 to wake them up.
- 7 to get some petrol.
- 8 to see the Pyramids.
- 9 to tell him about the party.
- 10 to see who it was.

50.3

2 for	7 to
3 for	8 to
4 to	9 to
5 to	10 for
6 for	

50.4

2 for the rain to stop 3 for them to come

4 for the film to begin

Unit 51

51.1

- 2 get some petrol.
- 3 get a doctor.
- 4 get your shoes?
- 5 get a ticket.
- 6 get the job.
- 7 get some milk?
- 8 gets a very good salary.

51.2

- 2 getting late.
- 3 getting married

4 getting ready 5 getting dark.

51.3

- 2 get tired.
- 3 get wet.
- 4 got married
- 5 got lost.
- 6 get old.
- 7 got better.

51.4

- 2 I left London at 10.15 and got to Bristol at 11.45.
- 3 I left home at 8.30 and got to the airport at 9.30.
- 4 I left the party at 11.15 and got home at midnight.

51.5

- 2 got off
- 3 got out of
- 4 got on

Unit 52

52.1

- 3 to
- 4 to
- 5 (no preposition)
- 6 for
- 7 to ... to
- 8 on (holiday) to (Italy)
- 9 for
- 10 to
- 11 (no preposition)
- 12 to
- 13 on
- 14 to

52.2

- 2 Diane went fishing.
- 3 Peter went shopping.
- 4 Harry went swimming.
- 5 Linda went skiing.
- 6 Sheila went climbing.

- 2 fishing
- 3 to sleep
- 4 to the bank

a walk

stopping

me

noliday ... to Portugal

- it 53

三1

2 nm 6 her Tem 7 him A ner 8 them

= Tem

and pill

got its

33.2

_ ⁻e ... me

them ___

- rey ... us

fe ...her

she ... them

ney ... me e ... him

she ... you

7 us 2 him 3 me 8 them - them 9 her 5 it 10 them = them

53.4

2 it (to) him

them (to) her

- it (to) me

5 it (to) them

6 them (to) us

Unit 54

2 They live with their parents.

3 We live with our parents.

Ann lives with her parents.

5 I live with my parents.

6 John lives with his parents.

7 Do you live with your parents?

8 Most children Hve with their parents.

54.2

2 She's going to wash her hands.

3 We're going to wash our hands.

4 He's going to wash his hands.

5 They're going to wash their hands.

6 Are you going to wash your hands?

54.3

2 their 6 their 3 his 7 her 4 his 8 their 5 her

54.4

2 your 11 your 3 his 12 our 13 his 4 Her 5 his 14 their 6 your 15 her 7 My 16 his 8 her 17 their 9 Our / My 18 its

Unit 55

10 their

55.1

2 mine 6 They're yours 3 ours 7 They're mine 8 It's his 4 hers 5 It's theirs

55.2

3 your

4 yours

5 my ... Mine

6 our ... theirs

7 their

8 My ... hers ... hers

55.3

3 (a) friend of hers

4 (some) friends of ours

5 (a) friend of mine

6 (a) friend of his

7 (a) friend of yours

55.4

2 Whose books are these?

3 Whose umbrella is this?

4 Whose jacket is this?

5 Whose glasses are these?

6 Whose cigarettes are these?

7 Whose hat is this?

8 Whose keys are these?

9 Whose camera is this?

10 Whose gloves are these?

11 Whose car is this?

12 Whose watch is this?

Unit 56

56.1

2 Yes, I know her but I can't remember her name.

3 Yes, I know them but I can't remember their names.

4 Yes, I know you but I can't remember your name.

56.2

2 He invited us to stay with him at his house.

3 They invited me to stay with them at their house.

4 I invited her to stay with me at my house.

5 We invited them to stay with us at our house.

6 You invited him to stay with you at your house.

7 She invited me to stay with her at her house.

56.3

3 Give it to him.

4 Give them to her.

5 Give it to us.

6 Give it to them.

7 Give them to him.

8 Give it to me.

56.4

2 I gave her my address and she gave me hers.

3 He gave me his address and I gave him mine.

4 We gave her our address and she gave us hers.

Key

- 5 I gave them my address and they gave me theirs.
- 6 She gave us her address and we gave her ours.
- 7 You gave him your address and he gave you his.
- 8 We gave them our address and they gave us thieirs.
- 9 They gave you their address and you gave them yours.
- 10 She gave him her address and he gave her his.

Unit 57

57.1

- 2 myself
- 3 herself 6 ourselves 4 ourselves 7 themselves 5 yourself 8 himself

57.2

2 yourself	7 herself
3 myself	8 myself
4 themselves	9 himself
5 myself	10 yourself
6 themselves	11 yourselves

57.3

- 2 John lives by himself.
- 3 Do you live by yourself?
- 4 She went to the cinema by herself.
- 5 When I saw'him, he was by himself.
- 6 Don't go out by yourself.
- 7 I had dinner by myself.

57.4

- 2 We know each other.
- 3 They like each other.
- 4 We can help each other.
- 5 They understand each other.
- 6 They give each other presents. / They give presents to each other.
- 7 Tom and Jill didn't see each other.
- 8 We didn't speak to each
- 9 They often write letters to each other.

Unit 58

2 Philip's	7 Charles's
3 Ann's	8 Ann's
4 Robert's	9 Robert's
5 Ted's	10 Charles's
6 Robert's	

58.2

2 Alice's

58.3

	your sister's birthday
4	the colour of this coat
5	the top of the page.
6	Jill's address
7	the cause of the accident
	My parents' house.
9	Maria's spoken English
10	the best part of the day.
11	My brother's job
12	the end of the street.
13	Pat's favourite colour

14 The walls of this house

Unit 59

3 a window 4 a horse

59.1

5 an airport
6 a university
7 an organisation
8 a restaurant
9 a Chinese restaurant
10 an Indian restaurant
11 an accident
12 a bad accident
13 a question
14 an important question
15 a hamburger
16 an hour
17 an economic problem
18 a nice evening

59.2

2	It's	a river.
3	lt's	an animal.
4	lt's	a game.
5	It's	a flower.

6 It's a tool.

7 It's a vegetable 8 It's a planet.

9 It's a musical instru 10 It's a fruit.

59.3

2 He's a shop assistant 3 He's a photographer 4 She's a taxi-driver.

5 She's a nurse.

6 He's a private detect 7 She's a road-sweeper

8 I'm a / an ...

59.4

- 2 We went to a party as night.
- 3 My brother is an artist
- 4 It's a beautiful day total
- 5 I ate a sandwich and and apple.
- 6 Britain is an industria country.
- 7 I had a bath this momina
- 8 Barbara works in an office 9 It's a very difficult question.
- 10 We stayed at an expense hotel.

Unit 60

60.1	
3 boats	16 people
4 languages	17 families
5 watches	18 holidays
6 countries	19 sandwiche
7 knives	20 cities
8 women	21 mice
9 addresses	
10 sheep	g em films
11 teeth	

13 children 15 umbrellas

12 leaves

Key

63.3

- 3 a bicycle
- 4 the roof
- 5 the play
- 6 a difficult language
- 7 a cigarette
- 8 the kitchen
- 9 the next train
- 10 a nice day

Unit 64

64.1

- 3 the third floor.
- 4 the fire brigade.
- 5 the first man ... the moon?
- 6 tits capital
- 7 the largest city ... the werld?
- 8 the army?
- 9 the sea?
- 10 okay
- 11 the top shelf... the right.
- 12 the country ... the nearest village.
- 13 the end of May ... the beginning of April.
- 14 the same price.
- 15 The Prime Minister ... the most important person ... the British government.
- 16 the man ...the left?
- 17 the name.
- 18 the first time
- 19 okay
- 20 the fridge

64.2

- 2 the same time.
- 3 the same problem.
- 4 the same age.
- 5 the same colour.
- 6 the same day.

64.3

- 3 The sun
- 4 television
- 5 (any) breakfast.
- 6 The police
- 7 the guitar
- 8 lunch
- 9 the radio.
- 10 The sky

Unit 65

65.1

- 2 They're at the cinema.
- 3 She's in hospital.
- 4 She's at the airport.
- 5 They're at home.
- 6 He's in prison.

65.2

- 3 the dentist
- 4 bed
- 5 university
- 6 the cinema
- 7 the airport
- 8 school
- 9 home
- 10 the station

65.3

- 3 the doctor
- 4 okay
- 5 okay
- 6 the bank
- 7 okay
- 8 the city centre
- 9 okay
- 10 the theatre
- 11 okay
- 12 the toilet
- 13 okay
- 14 okay
- 15 okay
- 16 the post office
- 17 okay
- 18 okay

Unit 66

66.1

- If possible, check your sentences with someone who speaks English. Here are some example answer:
- 2 I don't like dogs.
- 3 I hate hard work.
- 4 I leve Italian food.
- 5 I hate loud music.
- 6 I don't mind small children.
- 7 I like hot weather.
- 8 I don't like staying in hotels.

- 9 I love opera.
- 10 I don't mind big cities.

66.2

- If possible, check your sentences with someone who speaks English. Here ere some example answers:
- 2 I'm not inteasted in polities.
- 3 I'm very interested in sport.
- 4 I don't know much about art
- 5 I don't know anything about astronomy.
- 6 I'm interested in economics.

66.3

- 3 friends
- 4 coffee
- 5 the coffee
- 6 parties
- 7 Tennis
- 8 The water
- 9 cold water
- 10 The paintings11 Money ... happiness
- 12 English
- 13 Children ... things
- 14 the salt
- 15 restaurants
- 16 capitalism
- 17 photographs
- 18 the photographs

Unit 67

- 3 Switzerland
- 4 The Amazon
- 5 Azia
- 6 The Pacific
- 7 The Rhine
- 8 The United States
- 9 Kenya
- 10 The Andes
- 11 Tokyo
- 12 Malta
- 13 The Alps
- 14 The Red Sea
- 15 The Bahamas

T7.2

- 3 At the Intercontinental Hotel.
- Milan is a large city in the north of Italy.
- 5 okay

ie who

out aid

mins

ré some

- Manila is the capital of the Philippines.
- 7 The National Gallery is in Trafalgar Square in London.
- 8 okay
- 9 The Rocky Mountains are in North America.
- 10 In London, the Houses of Parliament are beside the River Thames.
- 11 Have you ever been to the British Museum?
- 12 okav
- 13 Last night we saw a play at the Royal Theatre.
- 14 You must visit the Museum of Modern Art.
- 15 okay
- 16 When I finish my studies, I'm going to the United States for a year.
- 17 The Panama Canal joins the Atlantic Ocean and the Pacific Ocean.
- 18 There are two cinemas in our town - the Regal and the Plaza.
- 19 If you sail from Britain to' Denmark, you cross the North Sea.
- 20 Mary comes from a small village in the west of Ireland.
- 21 okay
- 22 Have you ever been to the USA?

Unit 68

68.1

- 3 this sandwich
- 4 these things
- 5 these children
- 6 this place
- 7 these houses
- 8 these trousers
- 9 that picture

- 10 those socks
- 11 those men
- 12 that tree
- 13 those eggs
- 14 that woman
- 15 that room 16 those plates

68.2

- 2 Is that your umbrella?
- 3 Are those your books?
- 4 Is this your hat?
- 5 Are these your cigarettes?
- 6 Are those your keys?
- 7 Is that your bicycle?
- 8 Are those your glasses?
- 9 Is this your watch?
- 10 Are these your gloves?

68.3

- 2 Who lives in that house?
- 3 Look at those birds!
- 4 How much are these postcards?
- 5 Excuse me, is this seat free?
- 6 These plates are dirty.

Unit 69

69.1

- 2 No, I don't need one.
- 3 No, I can't ride one.
- 4 I'm sorry, I haven't got one.
- 5 Yes, there's one in Mill Road.
- 6 No thank you, I've just had

69.2

- 2 a new one.
- 3 a better one.
- 4 a big one.
- 5 an old one.
- 6 a different one.

69.3

- 2 B: Which ones?
- A: The green ones.
- 3 B: Which one?
 - A: The one with the red door.

- 4 B. Which one?
 - A: The black one.
- B: Which ones?
 - A: The ones on the wall.
- 6 B: Which ones?
 - A: The ones on the top shelf.
- 7 B: Which one?
 - A: The tall one with long hair.
- 8 B: Which ones?
 - A: The yellow ones.
- B: Which one?
 - A: The one with a
 - moustache and glasses.
- 10 B: Which ones?
 - A: The ones I took on the beach last week.

Unit 70

70.1

- 3 some
- 4 some
- 5 any
- 6 anv
- 7 some
- 8 any
- 9 any ... some
- 10 any
- 11 some
- 12 any ... any.
- 13 any ... some.
- 14 some
- 15 some ... any
- 16 some

70.2

- 2 any shampoo 3 some stamps.
- 4 any foreign languages
- 5 any photographs.
- 6 some problems
- 7 any chairs
- 8 some fresh air.
- 9 any batteries
- 10 some milk
- 11 some friends 12 some cheese

70.3

2 something

Key

- 3 anything
- 4 anything
- 5 Somebody / Someone
- 6 anything
- 7 anybody / anyone
- 8 something
- 9 anything
- 10 anybody / anyone

Unit 71

71.1

- 2 There are no pictures on the walls.
- 3 Carol has got no free time.
- 4 There is no restaurant in this hotel.
- 6 There isn't any oil in the tank.
- 7 I haven't got any stamps.
- 8 Tom hasn't got any brothers or sisters.

71.2

- 3 any
- 4 no
- 5 any
- 6 any ... any
- 7 no
- 8 no
- 9 any
- 10 any

71.3

- 2 any cigarettes
- 3 no money.
- 4 no swimming-pool.
- 5 any questions.
- 6 no friends.
- 7 no difference
- 8 any photographs ... no film
- 9 any furniture

71.4

If possible, check your answers with someone who speaks English. Here are some example answers:

- 2 Three.
- 3 Two cups.
- 4 None.
- 5 None.

Unit 72

72.1

- 2 There's nobody in the office.
- 3 I've got nothing to do.
- 4 There's nothing on TV tonight.
- 5 Jack has got no-one to help him.
- 6 We found nothing.

72.2

- 2 I haven't got anything to read.
- 3 There isn't anybody in the bathroom.
- 4 We haven't got anything to cat.
- 5 There wasn't anyone on the bus.
- 6 She didn't hear anything.

72.3

- 3 Nothing
- 4 Nobody / No-one
- 5 Nobody / No-one
- 6 Nothing
- 7 Nothing
- 8 Nobody / No-one
- 3a I don't want anything.
- 4a I didn't meet anybody / anyone.
- 5a Nobody / No-one knows the answer.
- 6a I didn't buy anything. I bought nothing!
- 7a Nothing happened.
- 8a Nobody / No-one was late.

72.4

- 3 anything.
- 4 Nobody / No-one
- 5 Nothing
- 6 anything.
- 7 Nobody / No-one knows ... didn't tell anybody / anyone
- 8 Nothing
- 9 anything
- 10 Nothing
- 11 anybody / anyone.
- 12 nobody / no-one

Unit 73

73.1

- 2 something.
- 3 somewhere,
- 4 somebody / someone
- 6 Nowhere.
- 7 Nothing.
- 8 Nobody / No-one.
- 6a I'm not going anywers
- 7a I don't want anything
- 8a I'm not looking

for anybody/ anyone

73.2

- 3 anything
- 4 anything or anybody / anyone.
- 5 somebody / someone
- 6 something
- 7 'Did anybody / anyone survivo.' 'No, nobody / no-one.'
- 8 anything.
- 9 Nobody / No-one
- 10 anybody / anyone
- 11 Nothing
- 12 anywhere.

73.3

- 2 anything to cat.
- 3 nothing to do / nothing to read / nowhere to go / nowhere to play.
- 4 anywhere to sit.
- 5 something to drink
- 6 somewhere to play / somewhere to go / someth to do.
- 7 something to read/ something to do
- 8 nowhere to stay.

Unit 74

- 2 Every day
- 3 Every room
- 4 every time.
- 5 every word.

Unit 78

78.1

2 A few. 6 A little. 3 A little. 7 A few. 4 A few. 8 A little. 5 A little.

78.2

2 a little milk
3 A few days
4 a little Russian.
5 a few friends.
6 A few times.
7 a few houses
8 a little fresh air.
9 a few chairs.

78.3

2 very little coffee.
3 very little rain.
4 very few hotels,
5 very little time.
6 very few tables.

78.4

2 A few 6 few 3 little 7 a little 4 a little 5 a few 9 Few

Unit 79

79.1

2 black clouds
3 long holiday.
4 interesting person.
5 dangerous job.
6 fresh air.
7 old photograph or interesting photograph
8 serious problem
9 sharp knife

79.2

2 It looks new.
3 I feel ill.
4 You look surprised.
5 They smell nice.
6 It tastes awful.

10 expensive hotels.

79.3

2 He doesn't sound American.
3 She doesn't look rich.
4 I don't feel cold.
5 You don't sound English.
6 They don't look friendly.
7 It doesn't taste good.

Unit 80

80.1

2 badly 3 quietly 4 angrily

5 dangerously or fast

6 fast

80.2

2 Come quickly
3 know ... well.
4 work hard.
5 sleep well
6 win easily.
7 Think carefully
8 explain ... clearly.

80.3

2 angry
3 careful ... carefully
4 slowly
5 slow
6 good
7 well
8 hard
9 suddenly
10 well
11 well (= not ill – adjective)
12 quickly
13 nice
14 badly
15 quiet

Unit 81

81.1

2 bigger 3 slower 4 more expensive 5 higher 6 more dangerous

81.2

2 stronger
3 happier
4 more careful
5 more important
6 worse
7 more difficult
8 larger
9 further
10 more serious
11 more crowded
12 prettier

81.3

2 hotter / warmer 3 dearer / more expensive 4 worse 5 further 6 more difficult

3 taller.
4 harder.
5 more comfortable.
6 better.
7 nicer.
8 heavier.
9 more interested
10 warmer
11 better.
12 bigger.
13 more beautiful..
14 sharper
15 more polite.

Unit 82

82.1

3 Liz is taller than Ben.4 Liz starts work earlier than Ben.5 Ben works harder than Liz.

6 Ben has got more money than Liz.

7 Lil is a better driver than Ben.

8 Ben is friendlier than Liz. / Ben is more friendly than Liz.

9 Ben is a better dancer than Liz.

10 Liz is more intelligent than Ben.

- 11 Liz speaks French better than Ben. / Liz speaks better French than Ben. / Liz's French is better than Ben's.
- 12 Ben goes to the cinema more than Liz (does). / Ben goes to the cinema more often than Liz (does).

82.2

- 2 You're older than her. /... than she is.
- 3 You work harder than me. / ... than I do. / ... than I work.
- 4 You smoke more than him. / ... than he does. / ...than he smokes.
- 5 You're a better cook than me. / ... than I am.
- 6 You know more people than us. / ... than we do. / ... than we know.
- 7 You've got more money than them. / ... than they have.
- 8 You can run faster than ma. / ... than I can.
- 9 You've been here longer than her. / ... than she has.
- 10 You got up earlier than me.
 / ... than I did. / ... than I
 got up.
- 11 You're more interesting than him. / ... than he is.

82.3

šen.

- 2 Jack's mother is much younger than his father.
- 3 My camera cost a bit more than yours. / ... than your camera. or My camera was a bit more expensive than yours. / ... than your camera.
- 4 I feel much better today than yesterday. / I feel much better today than I did yesterday. / I feel much better today than I felt yesterday.
- 5 It's a bit warmer today than yesterday. / It's a bit warmer today than it was yesterday.

6 Ann is a much better tennis player than me. /... than I am. or Ann is much better at tennis than me. /... than I am. or Ann plays tennis much better than me. /... than I do.

Unit 83

83.1

- 2 A is longer than but not as long as C.
- 3 C is heavier than A but not as heavy as B.
- 4 A is older than but not as old as B.
- 5 B has got more money than C but not as much (money) as A. or ... but less (money) than A.
- 6 C works harder than A but not as hard as B.

83.2

- 2 Your room isn't as big as mine. / ... as big as my room.
- 3 I didn't get up as early as you (did). / ... as early as you got Up.
- 4 They didn't play as well as us. / ... as well as we did. / ... as well as we played.
- 5 You haven't been here as long as me. / ... as long as I have (been here).

83.3

2 as 6 than 3 than 7 as 4 than 8 than 5 as

83.4

- 2 Julia lives in the same street as Caroline.
- 3 Julia got up at the same time as Andrew.
- 4 Andrew's car is the same colour as Caroline's (car).

Unit 84

84.1

- 2 C is longer than A.
 D is the longest.
 B is the shortest.
- 3 D is younger than C.B is the youngest.C is the oldest.
- 4 D is more expensive than A. C is the most expensive. A is he cheapest.
- 5 A is better than C. A is the best. D is the worst.

84.2

- 2 Everest is the highest mountain in the world.
- 3–6 Alaska is the largest state in the USA.

 Brazil is the largest country in South America.

 Jupiter is the largest planet in the solar system.

 The Nile is the longest river in Africa.

84.3

2 the happiest day

3 the best film

4 the most popular singer

5 the worst mistake

6 the prettiest village

7 the coldest day

8 the most interesting person

Unit 85

85.1

3 enough paint.

4 big enough.

5 long enough.

6 enough chairs. 7 enough wind.

8 strong enough.

- 3 old enough.
- 4 enough time

Key

- 5 big enough
- 6 eat enough.
- 7 enough fruit
- 8 tired enough.
- 9 enough clothes
- 10 practise enough.

85.3

- 2 old enough to get married.
- 3 warm enough to sit in the garden.
- 4 enough bread to make sandwiches.
- 5 enough money to go on holiday.
- 6 well enough to go to work (today).

Unit 86

86.1

- 2 too high. 5 too big. 3 too hot. 6 too crowded.
- 4 too fast.

- 86.2 3 enough 4 enough
- 6 enough 7 too many
- 5 too much

86.3

- 3 It's too far.
- 4 It's too expensive.
- 5 It isn't big enough. 6 It wasn't warm enough.
- 7 I'm too busy.
- 8 It isn't sharp enough.

86.4

- 2 It's too early to go to beti.
- 3 It's too warm to wear a coat.
- 4 They're too young to get married.
- 5 It's too dangerous to go out at night.
- 6 It's too late to phone Ann
- 7 They were too surprised to say anything.

Unit 87

- 2 I don't like football very much.
- 3 I lost my watch last week.
- 4 Tom read the letter slowly.
- 5 Do you know London very welf?
- 6 We ate our dinner very quickly.
- 7 Did you buy that jacket in England?
- 8 I don't speak French very
- 9 They crossed the street carefully.
- 10 I borrowed £50 from my brother.
- 11 We enjoyed the party very much.
- 12 Ann passed the examination easily.
- 13 We do the same thing every
- 14 I don't like this picture very much.
- 15 The woman put the money in her bag.
- 16 Did you watch the news on television?
- 17 I explained my plan carefully.
- 18 She smokes ten cigarettes every day.
- 19 I did a lot of housework vesterday.
- 20 We met some friends at the concert.
- 21 You wear the same clothes every day.
- 22 I want to speak English fluently.

87.2

- 2 We arrived at the party early.
- 3 I didn't go to work yesterday.
- 4 Are you going to work tomorrow?
- 5 They have lived here since
- 6 Will you be at home this evening?

- 7 They are going to I amount next week.
- 8 Did you go to the create last night?
- 9 Will they be here on Monday?
- 10 Jill goes to Italy ever I I Alice was born in Longon in 1951.
- 12 I had my breakfast in bea this morning.
- 13 Barbara is going to university in October
- My parents have been to the United States many times
- 15 I saw a beautiful bird garden this morning.
- 16 I think I left my umbre a the restaurant last nicht.

Unit 88

88.1

- 2 He sometimes smokes.
- 3 He is often ill.
- 4 He never cats fish.
- 5 He is always late for work
- 6 He very rarely writes letters or He seldom writes letters

- 2 Susan is always polite.
- 3 I usually finish work at har past five.
- 4 Jill has just started a new job.
- 5 I rarely go to bed before midnight.
- 6 The bus isn't usually late.
- 7 I don't often cat meat. 8 I will never forget what you
- said. Have you ever broken your
- leg? 10 Do you still work in the
- same place? 11 They always stay in the
- same hotel. 12 Diane doesn't usually work on Saturdays.
- 13 I can never remember his name.
- 14 What do you usually have for breakfast?

5 When I arrived, Jan was already there.

至3

1000

to 596

256

- es, and I also speak French.
- es, and I'm also hungry.
- 'es, and I've also been to reland.
- es, and I also bought some books.

38.4

- 2 They both like football.
- They are both students.
- They have both got cars. / They both have cars.
- 5 They are all married.
- 6 They were all born in England.
- 7 They all live in New York.

Unit 89

89.1

- 2 Do you still smoke?
- 3 Are you still a student?
- 4 Do you still go to the cinema a lot?
- 5 Have you still got a motor bike? / Do you still have a motor-bike?
- 6 Do you still play tennis?

89.2

- 2 Is Ann here yet? / Has Ann arrived yet? / Has Ann come
- 3 Have you finished (reading the newspaper) yet? / Have you finished with the newspaper yet?
- 4 Are you ready (to go out) yet?
- 5 Have you decided (where you're going) yet? / Do you know where you're going yet?

89.3

2 They were wailing for the bus.

- They're still watting for the bus.
- The bus hasn't come yet.
- 3 He was looking for a job. He's still looking for a job. He hasn't found a job yet.
- 4 She was asleep./She was in bed.
 She's still asleep. / She's still in bed.
 She hasn't woken up yet. /
 - She isn't awake yet. / She hasn't got up yet. / She isn't up yet.
- 5 They were having dinner./
 They were eating.
 They're still having dinner. /
 They're still eating.
 They haven't finished (their)
 dinner yet. / They haven't
 finished eating yet.

Unit 90

90.1

- 2 He gave the TV set to Jack.
- 3 He gave the books to his sister.
- 4 He gave the cassettes to a friend.
- 5 He gave the radio to his cousin.
- 6 He gave the lamp to Sarah.

90.2

- 2 I gave Alice a box of chocolates / some chocolates.
- 3 I gave Mark a pair of gloves / some gloves.
- 4 I gave Diane a watch.
- 5 I gave Kevin a pen.
- 6 I gave Mary some flowers.

90.3

- 2 Can you lend me an umbrella? / your umbrella?
- 3 Can you gr e me my coat?
- 4 Can you lend Ms"ry a bicycle? / your bicycle?
- 5 Can you send Tom some Information?

6 Can you show me the letter? 7 Can you lend them £100?

90.4

- 2 Yes, can you give it to me, please?
- 3 Yes, can you give them to me, please?
- 4 Yes, can you give it to me, please?
- 5 Yes, can you give it to me, please?
- 6 Yes, can you give them to me, please?

Unit 91

9 in 10 at 11 on 12 in 14 in 15 on	16 oil 17 at 18 at 19 at 20 oll 21 at
9 in 10 at 11 on 12 in 13 at 14 in 15 on	16 at 17 in 18 in 19 at 20 at
	10 at 11 on 12 in 14 in 15 on 9 in 10 at 11 on 12 in 13 at 14 in

91.3

- 2 I'll phone you in three days.
- 3 My exam Is in two weeks.
- 4 Tom will be here in half an hour. / ... in 30 minutes.

- 3 in
- 4 (no preposition)
- 5 (no preposition)
- 6 at
- 7 (no preposition)
- 8 (no preposition)
- 9 on
- 10 (no preposition)
- 11 at
- 12 in

Unit 92

92.1

- 2 Alex lived in Canada until 1985.
- 3 Alex has lived in England since 1985.
- 4 Alice lived in France until 1986.
- 5 Alice has lived in Switzerland since 1986.
- 6 Carol worked in a hotel from 1985 to 1988. / ... from 1985 until 1988.
- 7 Carol has worked in a restaurant since 1988.
- 8 Gerry was a teacher from 1978 to 1984. / ... from 1978 until 1984.
- 9 Gerry has been a salesman since 1984.
- 11 Alex has lived in England for ... years.
- 12 Alice has lived in Switzerland for ... years.
- 13 Carol worked in a hotel for three years.
- 14 Carol has worked in a restaurant for ... years.
- 15 Gerry was a teacher for six years.
- 16 Gerry has been a salesman for ... years.

92.2

2 until	9 since	
3 for	10 until	
4 Since	11 for	
5 Until	12 until	
6 for	13 Since	
7 for	14 for	
8 until		

Unit 93

93.1

- 2 after lunch3 before the end.4 during the course.
- 5 before they went to Australia.
- 6 during the night 7 after the concert
- 8 before you cross the road.

93.2

3 while	6 while
4 while	7 during
5 during	8 while

93.3

- 2 Think carefully before answering the question.
- 3 Mary put on her glasses before reading the letter.
- 4 Before getting into the car, the man took off his coat.
- 5 We were very tired after walking for three hours.
- 6 I felt sick after eating too much chocolate.
- 7 After reading the book a second time, I understood it better. *or* I understood the book better after reading it a second time.
- 8 After leaving school, John worked in a department store for two years. *or* John worked in a department store for two years after leaving school.

Unit 94

94.1

- 2 in a box.
- 3 at the airport.
- 4 in bed.
- 5 at the end of the street.
- 6 in the sky.
- 7 in hospital.
- 8 at a party.

94.2

- 2 in that field.
- 3 in the river
- 4 in my tea
- 5 in this book
- 6 in this photograph

94.3

2 at	10 at
3 at at	11 in
4 in	12 at
5 in	13 at
6 at	14 in
7 at	15 at
8 In	16 in
9 in	

Unit 95

95.1

- 2 to bed.
- 3 to the bank
- 4 to a concert / to the cinema
- 5 to France
- 6 to the cinema
- 7 to hospital

95.2

2 to	9 in
3 to	10 to
4 in	11 in
5 to	12 in
6 in	13 to
7 in in	14 in

8 to

35	.3	
2	to	
3	to	
4	at	
5	to	

- 6 at 7 at or in a restaurant ... to
- the hotel 8 (no preposition)
- 8 (*no* 9 at
- 10 to ... at
- 11 (no preposition)
- 12 to
- 13 at
- 14 (no preposition)
- 15 to

16 at	97.2		99.2	
17 at	2 off		2 of	9 of
18 at	3 over		3 to	10 on
	4 out of or through	ah	4 on	11 of
Unit 96	5 through		5 at	12 in
	6 out of		6 on	13 from
96.1	7 into		7 about	14 for
2 on the beach.	8 round		8 on	
3 on this plant				
4 on the door.	97.3		99.3	
5 on his finger.	2 in	- Dry - I	2 at remen	nberina
6 on a bicycle.	3 on or over		3 in going.	-
00.0	4 out of or from		4 with wea	
96.2	5 through into		5 for getting	
2 behind	6 out of or throug	h	7 without s	
3 above	7 round		8 without s	
4 in front of	8 over		9 without a	
5 on	9 on			
6 opposite	117711111111111111111111111111111111111		Unit 10	0
7 below or under	Unit 98			
8 above			100.1	
9 under	98.1			F -4
10 on	2 by		2 to	5 at 6 for
96.3	3 with		3 for	6 101
	4 about by		4 to	
2 on 3 between	5 by		100.2	
4 on next to	6 by			3013000
5 above	7 with		2 to	12 (no preposition)
6 above below	8 about	The state of the s	3 to	13 to
o above bolow	9 by		4 for	14 on
96.4	10 at		5 to	15 about / of
2 on the right.	98.2		6 about / 7 for	17 after
3 in the middle.		12 hv	8 on	18 for
4 behind	2 By on 3 at	12 by 13 at	9 to	19 after
5 in front of	4 without	14 with	10 for	20 at
6 next to / beside	5 with	15 without	11 to	21 for
The position of the	6 by	16 by	11 10	
Unit 97	7 about	17 about	100.3	
MANAGE STREET, MAS CO.	8 by	18 with		da hayı I faal ar It
97.1	9 with	19 by		ds how I feel. or It
2 Go under the bridge.	10 at	20 with		s on how Ids what time I leave.
3 Go up the hill.	11 about	21 at		pends on what time
4 Go down the stairs.		22 by		ds how much it is.
5 Go along the street.				pends on how much
6 Go into the hotel.	Unit 99		or it dop	ondo on now maon
7 Go past the hotel.				
8 Go to the station.	99.1			
9 Go round the corner.		5.00		
10 Go across the road.	2 in	5 on 6 with		
11 Go over the bridge.	3 to 4 of	O WILIT		
12 Go through the park.	7 01			

Key

Unit 101

101.1

2 in 6 off 3 up 7 down 4 away / off 8 out 5 round

101.2

2 away / out 3 round. 4 out ... back 5 down 6 away ... back 7 over / down. 8 back

101.3

2 got up 6 wash up.
3 breaks 7 slowed down
4 speak up 8 takes off 5 Hold on 9 carried on 10 gave up

Unit 102

102.1

2 He put on his shirt. He put his shirt on. He put it on.

3 She put on her glasses.
She put her glasses on.
She put them on.

4 Can you turn on the TV?
Can you turn the TV on?
Can you turn it on?

5 She rang up her brother. She rang her brother up. She rang him up.

6 We took off our shoes.
We took our shoes off.
We took them off.

7 They gave back the money.

They gave the money back.

They gave it back.

8 She put down her bags.

She put her bags down.

She put them down.

9 I switched on the engine.
I switched the engine on.
I switched it on.

10 She filled in the form.
She filled the form in.
She filled it in.

11 We put out the fire.

We put the fire out.

We put it out.

102.2

3 (turned) on the radio / (turned) the radio on.

4 (give) them back

5 (put) down my book / (pot) my book down

6 (picked) it up.

7 (put)'on my gloves / (put) my gloves on.

8 (took) off my jacket / (took) my jacket off

9 (brought) them back

10 (picked) up the photograph / (picked) the photograph up ... (put) it back/(put) it down

11 (knocked) over a glass / (knocked) a glass over

12 (look) it up

13 (throw) them away.

14 (knocked) me out / (knocked) me down / (knocked) me over.

15 (put) out your cigarette/ (put) your cigarette out

16 (turn) it down

17 (tried) on some shoes / (tried) some shoes on

18 (showed) us round.

19 (crossed) it out.

20 (gave) it up

Unit 103

103.1

3 and (she) looked out.

4 but he didn't see me.

5 and (she) swam to the other side.

6 or did you stay at home

7 and (they) took some photographs.

8 but they don't use it very often.

9 but I can't remember his name.

10 and don't come back!

11 or do you want to get a

103.2

3 so I walked in.

4 because she was ill.

5 because she's friendly and interesting.

6 so we didn't play tennis.

7 so we walked home.

8 because I couldn't sleep.

9 so don't phone me.

10 because they haven't got a key.

11 because she does the same thing all the time.

103.3

If possible, check your answers with someone who speaks English. Here are some example answers:

3 see example I

4 I wrote a letter but I didn't post it.

5 I was tired, so I went to bed early.

6 see example 2

Unit 104

104.1

2–7 When I'm tired, I like watching TV.
When I phoned them, there was no answer.
When she first met him, she didn't like him very much.

When she goes to London, she always stays at the same hotel.

When the programme ended, I switched off the TV.

When they arrived at the hotel, there were no rooms free.

104.2

2 when you heard the news 3 before he answered the

question.

4 when I explained it to her.

5 after they got married.

6 while I was out

7 while I was reading.

8 before I go to sleep.

104.3

2 I finish

3 We'll come ... we're

4 I see ... I'll show

5 you go

6 stops

7 I'll be ... she leaves

8 I'm

9 I'll give ... I go

Unit 105

105.1

2 If I can get a flight, I'll fly home on Sunday.

3–5 If you come home late tonight, please come in quietly.

If I don't feel well tomorrow, I'm not going to work.

If you have any problems, I'll try to help you.

105.2

2 It will be nice if you can come to the party.

3–5 You'll be cold if you don't wear a coat.
What are you going to do if you don't pass your examinations?
I'm sure they'll understand if you explain the problem to them.

105.3

2 is

3 we arrive

4 is

5 I'll be ... they get

6 Will you go ... they invite

105.4

2 If 5 if 3 if 6 When 4 When 7 if

Unit 106

106.1

- 2 A butcher is a person who sells meat.
- 3 A musician is a person who plays a musical instrument.

4 A patient is a person who is ill in hospital.

5–9 A photographer is a person who takes photographs.
A dentist is a person who looks after your teeth.
A fool is a person who is very stupid.
A genius is a person who is very intelligent.
A liar is a person who doesn't tell the truth.

106.2

- 2 The woman who opened the door was wearing a yellow dress.
- 3 The people who live next door to us are very nice.
- 4 The policeman who stopped our car wasn't very friendly.
- 5 The boy who broke the window ran away.

106.3

2 who (or that)

3 that (or which)

4 who (or that)

5 who (or that)

6 that (or which)

7 that (or which)

8 who (or that)

9 that (or which)

10 who (or that)

11 that (or which)

12 that (or which)

Unit 107

107.1

- 2 Did you find the key you lost?
- 3 I like the jacket Jill is wearing.
- 4 Where is the money I gave you?
- 5 I didn't believe the story she told us.
- 6 How much i'the oranges you bought?

107.2

- 2 The shoes **I'm wearing** are not very comfortable.
- 3 What's the name of the book you're reading?
- 4 She didn't get the letter I wrote to her.
- 5 I've lost the umbrella you gave me.
- 6 The people they invited to dinner didn't come.

107.3

- 2 What's the name of the woman you **spoke to**?
- 3 The house they live in is too small for them.
- 4 Did you enjoy the party you went to?
- 5 The chair I was sitting on wasn't very comfortable.
- 6 The map we looked at wasn't very clear.
- 7 Did you find the book you were looking for?
- 8 Who is the man Linda is dancing with?

- 2 What's the name of the restaurant where we had dinner?
- 3 Have you ever been to the village where they live?
- 4 The factory where John works is the biggest m the town.

INDEX

The numbers are unit numbers,	any and some 70	been and gone 16
not page numbers.	not + any 71	there has / have been 32
D (Dark)	any and no 71	before 93, 104
	anybody / anyone / anything	begin (begin to or begin
a / an 59	72–3	-ing) 47
a and some 61-2	anywhere 73	behind 96
a / an and the 63	apostrophe (I'm, it's etc.)	belong (to) 100
about 98	Appendix 3	below 96
above 96	apostrophe 's (my brother's	beside 96
across 97	car) 58	best 84
adjectives 79	are see am / is / are	better 81
adjectives and adverbs	around 97	between 96
(quick / quickly) 80	arrive 95	
	articles (a / an / the) 59–67	bit (a bit older / a bit bigger
comparatives (older / more	a / an 59, 61–2	etc.) 82
expensive) 81–3	a / an and the 63	born 20
superlatives (the oldest / the	the 64–7	both
most expensive) 84		both (of) 76
adjectives + preposition	as 83	word order 88
(afraid of etc.) 99	ask	but 103
get + adjective (get tired	ask somebody to 48	by 98
etc.) 51	ask somebody for 100	by after the passive (I was
possessive adjectives	at	bitten by a dog.) 20
(my / your / her etc.) 54	at 8 o'clock / at night etc. 91	by myself / by yourself etc.
adverbs 80	at the bus-stop / at work	57
word order (always /	etc. 94	can / can't 25
usually / also etc.) 88	at and to 95	comparative (older / more
advise (advise somebody to)	at the age of 98	
48	auxiliary verbs 35, 37-9	expensive etc.) 81–3
afraid (of) 99	away	conditional (if) 105
after 93, 104	run away /throw away etc.	conjunctions 103–5
ago 18	(phrasal verbs) 101–2,	before / after / while 93, 104
all	Appendix 6	and / but / or / so / because
all (of) 75	back	103
all and every etc. 74	come back / give back etc.	when 104
word order 88	(phrasal verbs) 101–2	<i>if</i> 105
along 97	bad (at) 99	continue (continue to or
also (word order) 88	be (infinitive of am / is / are)	continue -ing) 47
always	am / is / are 1–2	contractions (short forms -
always + present simple 5	am / is / are -ing (present	I'm, it's, you've etc.)
word order 88	continuous) 3–4, 34–5	Appendix 3
am / is / are 1–2	was / were 11	could / couldn't 25
am / is / are -ing (present	was / were -ing (past	countable and uncountable
continuous) 3–4, 34	continuous) 12, 34–5	nouns 61–2
there is / there are 31	have / has been (present	
an see a	perfect) 15–17, 35	decide (decide to) 47
and 103	will be 23	depend (depend on) 100
another 59	because 103	did 34–5, 37
	been	didn't in negatives 10, 40
any 70–3, 75	have /has been 15–17, 35	did in questions 10, 41
any (of) 75	nave mas been 10-11, 55	different (from) 99

speech and reported speech 49 location / does 34–5, 37 location / does in questions 7, 41 location / doesn't in negatives 6,40 location / put down etc. location / put do	The concert start at 7.30. (present simple) 21 am / is / are going to 22 will 23–4 shall 23–4 future after when / while / before etc. 104 future after if 105 geographical names with and without the 67 gerund see -ing get get in / out / on / off 51, 101 get up Appendix 5 give	his 54–6 holiday (on holiday) 52, 99 hope (to) 47 home go home / be at home etc. 52,. 65, 94–5 get home 51 how 44 how big? / how old? / how far etc. 44 How long have you? (present perfect) 17 How long does it take? 45 how much? / how many? 77
embedded questions (Do you	give something to somebody /	pronouns) 53, ,56
know what? etc.) 46	give somebody something 90	if 105
end (at the end of) 91, 94	give up / give back etc.	if and when 105
enjoy	(phrasal verbs) 101–2, Appendices 5–6	Do you know if? 46
enjoy -ing 47 enjoy myself / yourself etc.	go 52	in April / in summer etc. 91
57	go home / go to work / go to	in a room / in n park etc. 94
enough 85	the cinema 65 go -ing (go swimming etc.) 52	in five minutes / in three years etc. 91
enough and too 86 ever	go in / go back etc. (phrasal	in and to 95
Have you ever? 16	verbs) 101	put something in 97
superlative + ever 84	going to (am / is / are going to) 22	go in / fill in etc. (phrasal verbs) 101–2.
word order 88 every 74	gone and been 16	Appendix 6
everybody / everyone /	good	infinitive (do / play / see etc.)
everything / everywhere 74	good at 99	do / play / see and to do / to
expect 47–8	good and well 80 got	play / to see 34, 48 can / will / should etc. +
far	past of get 9, 51	infinitive 34
How far is it? 33	have / has got 14	verbs + to + infinitive (/
far → further 81	had	want to go) 34, 47–8 infinitive and -ing (do / doing
fast 80 fed up (with) 99	past of have 10, 14	etc.) 34, 47
few / a tew 78	had to 27, 29	I went to the shop to buy 50
finish (finish -ing) 47	happen (to) 100 hard 80	infinitive and for 50 adjective + infinitive (it's
for for ten minutes / for three	hate 47	easy to) 33
years etc. 18, 92	have / has	something to eat / nowhere
for, since and ago 18	have / has (got) 14 have done / have been etc.	to go etc.) 73 -ing (doing / playing / going
go for a walk etc. 52	(present perfect) 15–19,	etc.)
for and to (infinitive) 50 forget (to) 47	35	am / is / are -ing (present
from 92, 97	have / has / had to 29 help 48	continuous) 3–4, 21, 34–5 was / were -ing (past
front (in front of) 96	her 53–4, 56	continuous) 12, 34–5
further 81	hers 55, 56	verbs + -ing (enjoy -ing
future 21–4 I'm working tomorrow.	herself 57	etc.) 47
(present continuous) 21	him 53, 56 himself 57	ing and infinitive (do / doing etc.) 34, 47
VI /		0.0.7 04, 47

Index

prepositions + -ing 93, 99

prepositions + -ing 93, 99 go -ing (go swimming etc.) 52 interested (in) 99 into 97	mind (I don't mind -ing) 47 mine I yours I hers etc. (possessive pronouns) 55–6	of the roof of the bu of the of 67
irregular verbs 9, 36, Appendices 1–2	modal verbs will / can / might etc.) 23–30, 34	get off / turn off etc (phrasal verbs) 10 -2
is see am / is / are	more 81–2 most	Appendices 5–6
it 33. 53 it is and there is 31, 33	most (of) 75	offer (to) 47 often
it's and its 54 its 54	the most expensive / the most difficult etc. 84	I often go (often + present simple) 5
113 04	much	word order 88
just (word order) 88	much and many 77 much bigger / much more	on Monday / on 25 Acr
kind (kind to somebody / kind	expensive etc. 82	etc. 91 on the table / on the
of somebody) 99 know (Do you know where	not as much (as) 83 too much 86	etc. 96–7
?) 46	must 27 mustn't 27	on holiday / on televis so on fire etc. 99
	must and should 28	go on holiday / a trip ess
learn (to) 47	must and have to 29	get on / put on etc.
left (on the left) 96 lend (lend something to	my / your / his etc.	verbs) 101–2, Append 0== 5–6)
somebody) 90	(possessive adjectives) 54, 56	one / ones 69
less 82	myself / yourself etc.	opposite 96
let 48 like (What is it like?) 43	(reflexive pronouns) 57	or 103 ought to 28
like (verb)	need	our 54, 56
like -ing 47	need to 47	ours 55–6
would like 30, 47	needn't 27	ourselves 57 out
do you like? and would you	negatives 40	out of 97
like? 30 listen (to) 100	neither Neither am I / Neither do I	go out / put out etc. (phras
little / a little 78	etc. 39	verbs) 101–2, Append 5–6
look	neither (of) 76	over 97
look + adjective (look tired	never go (nover + present	climb over / knock over en
etc.) 79 look at / for / after 100	I never go (never + present simple) 5	(phrasal verbs) 101–2
lot (a lot) 77	I have never (present	Appendix 6
love 47	perfect + never) 16	pair (a pair of) 60
•	word order 88 next to 96	passive 20, 35
make (make somebody do	nice (nice to somebody / nice	past (preposition) 97
something) 48 many	of somebody) 99	past continuous (was / wer-ing) 12, 34–5
many and much 77	no (no money / no friends etc.)	past continuous (I was
not as many (as) 83	71, 75 nobody / no-one / nothing	doing) and past simple
too many 86	72–3	past participle
married (to) 99 may 26	none (of) 71, 75	(cleaned / done / spoke
me / you / him etc. (personal	nor (Nor am I / Nor do I etc.) 39	etc.) 36
pronouns) 53, 56	nouns (countable and	present perfect (I have cleaned) 15, 35
middle (in the middle of) 96	uncountable) 61–2	passive (the room was
might 26	nowhere 73	cleaned) 20, 35

regular (cleaned) and rregular (spoken) 36, Appendices 1–2 st simple (did / watched / saw etc.) 9–10 regative (didn't) 10, 40 regular and irregular verbs 9, 36, Appendices 1–2 was / were I I past simple + ago 18 past simple + ago 18 past simple (I did) and present perfect (I have done) 19 past simple passive (the room was cleaned) 20, 35 had (past of have) 14 reople 60 rersuade (persuade somebody to) 48 replace (persuade somebody to) 49 replace (persuade somebody to	prepositions + -ing (in -ing / without -ing etc.) 99 prepositions at the end (Who is she talking to?) 43 prepositions in relative clauses (the man she is talking to) 107 present continuous (am / is / are -ing) 3-4, 34-5 negative (I'm not -ing) 3 questions (are you -ing?) 4 present continuous (I am doing) and present simple (I do) 8 present continuous for the future (What are you doing tomorrow?) 21 present perfect (I have done) 15-19, 35 Have you ever? 16 gone and been 16 How long have you? 17 present perfect + for/since 17-18 present perfect (I have done) and past simple (I did) 19 present perfect continuous (I have been -ing) 17 present perfect + yet 89 regular and irregular verbs 15, 36, Appendices 1-2 present simple (I do / I watch / I like etc.) 5-7 negative (don't / doesn't) 6, 40 questions (do? / does?) 7. 41 present simple + always / usually / never 1 etc. 5 present simple passive (the room is cleaned) 20, 35 present simple for the future (The concert begins at 7.30.) 21	possessive pronouns (mine / yours etc.) 55–6 reflexive pronouns (myself / yourself etc.) 57 relative pronouns (who / that / which) 106–7 one / ones 69 put put something in 97 put on / put out etc. (phrasal verbs) 102. Appendix 6 questions 41–6 am / is / are 2 do ? / does? (present simple) 7, 41 did? (past simple) 10. 41 Who saw you? / Who did you see? 42 preposition at the end (Who is she talking to?) 43 What? / Which? / How? 44 Why don't? / Why isn't? etc. 41 How long does it take? 45 reply questions (Have you? / Are you? etc.) 38 question tags (do you? / isn't it? etc.) 38 Do you know where? (embedded questions) 46 reflexive pronouns (myself / yourself etc.) 57 regular and irregular verbs 9, 36, Appendices 1–2 relative clauses 106–7 reply questions (Have you? / Are you? etc.) 38 reported speech (He said that / He told me that) 49 right (on the right) 96 round 97
with / without 98–9 about 98 words + preposition (afraid	7.30.) 21 present simple after <i>when</i> and <i>if</i> 105–5	round 97 tutn round / shout round etc. (phrasal verbs) 101–2,
of etc.) 99 verbs + preposition (listen to / wait for etc.) 100	personal pronouns (I / me / you etc.) 53, 56	Appendix 6 's (apostrophe 's) 58, Appendix 3
,		

Index

same 64, 83 say / said he said that (reported	past simple (<i>I did</i>) 9–10, 13, 19,35 past continuous (<i>I was</i>	uncountable nouns (salt / water / music under 96–7
speech) 49 say and tell 49 shall 23–4	doing) 12–13, 34–35 present perfect (I have	until 92, 104 up 97
short forms (I'm / it's / you've etc.) Appendix 3	done) 15–19, 35 than 82-3 that	get up / pick up etc verbs) 101–2, Appending 5–6
should 28 simple past / simple present see past simple / present simple	that and this 68 He said that / He told me that (reported speech) 49	us 53, 56 usually usually + present s ===================================
since 18, 92	a thing that (relative	
singular and plural (a	clauses) 106-7	verbs
flower → some flowers) 60 so so am I / so do I etc. 39 so (I was tired, so I went to	the 63-7 the and a / an 63 the sun / the sky etc. 64	present tenses 3–8, 35 past tenses 9–13, 35 present perfect 15–19
bed.) 103	the top of / the end of etc. 64	modal verbs (will / car
some	the same 64 the cinema / the theatre / the	should etc.) 23–30 3–
some (of) 75.	bank etc. 65	regular and irregular 36, Appendices 1–2
some and a / an 61–2 some and any 70	flowers / the flowers 66	passive 20, 35
somebody / someone / someth	the in names of places 67	future 21–4
ing / somewhere 73	the biggest / the most	reported speech 49
sometimes	expensive etc. 84	negatives 40
sometimes + present simple 5	their 54, 56	questions 41–2
word order 88	theirs 55–6	verbs + -ing 47
sorry (sorry about and sorry for) 99	them 53, 56 themselves 57	verbs + to (infinitive) 34
speak (to) 100	there is / there are 31	verbs + preposition (look =
spelling Appendix 4	there was / there were 32	/ speak to etc.) 100 phrasal verbs (get up / pur ser
start (start to do or start -ing) 47 still 89	there has / have been 32 there will be 32	etc.) 101–2, Appendices 5–6
word order 88	there is and it is 31, 33 these 68	wait (for) 50, 100
stop (stop -ing) 47	think (think about / think of)	wait (for) 50, 100 want 47–8
suggest (suggest -ing) 47	100	was / were
superlative (the biggest / the	this 68	was / were -ing (past
most expensive etc.) 84	those 68	continuous) 12, 34–5
tags (question tags) 38	through 97	was / were done (passive) 21
take (It takes / How long	till (= until) 92	35
does it take?) 45	to 92, 95, 97 <i>get to</i> 51	there was / were 32
talk (to) 100	go to 52	well 80 were see was
tell / told	to + infinitive (to go / to be	what 42, 44
He told me to 48	etc.) see infinitive	What? 42, 44
He told me that 49	too 86	What like? 43
tell and say 49	too and either 39	What? and Which? 44
Can you tell me where? 46	turn (turn round / turn on	when 104
present continuous (I am	etc.)	when and if 105
doing) 3-5, 34–35	(phrasal verbs) 101–2, Appendix 6	whether 46 which
present simple (<i>I do</i>) 5–8, 35	try (to) 47	Which? 44

Index

which one / ones / 69
which ...? and What...? 44
thing which.... (relative clauses) 106–7
le 93, 104
who ...? 42
a person who ... (relative clauses) 106–7
clauses) 106–7
clauses 55
ll 23–4
will and shall 23
won't 23
there will be 32

C etc. | Fills

34

ok at

put on

e) 20.

with 98
without 98–9
won't (= will not) 23
word order
in questions 41–3
in present continuous
questions 4
in present simple questions 7
in past simple questions 10
Can you tell me where ...?
(embedded questions) 46
verb + object 87
place and time 87
always / usually / also etc. 88

after give / lend / pass /
send / show 90
worse 81
worst 84
would
I'd like/would you like? 30, 47
would like / love / hate /
prefer 47

yet 89 you 53, 56 your 54, 56 yours 55–60 yourself / yourselves 57

-1450-

O'ZBEKISTON RESPUBLIKASI
OLIY VA O'RTA MAXSUS TA'LIM VAZIRLIGI
TOSHKENT VILO'AST CHIRCHIQ
DAVLAT RECAGOGINA INSTITUTI
AXBOROT RESURS MARKAZI

Том 1. Подписано в печать 13 октябрь 2020 года. Формат 54х84 ¹/₈ Объем 32,75 печ. л. Тираж 3000 экз. Договор №125. Заказ №271.

Издательство «ART FLEX». 100011, г. Ташкент, ул. Навои, 30. Издательская лицензия АІ № 304, 22.06.2017 г. С разрешения издательства «Туркестан». 720000, г. Бишкек, ул. Раззакова, 55. Издательская лицензия ГР № 01885, 05.06.2000 г. Типография ООО «AZMIR NASHR PRINT». 100200, Ташкент, пр. Радиальный, 10.

Издание репринтное. Качество печати обусловлено раритетностью оригинала. Отпечатано с готовых диапозитивов издательства «Туркестан».

Essential Grammar in Use

A self-study reference and practice book for elementary students of English

Essential Grammar in Use is a grammar reference and practice book for elementary learners. Modelled on Raymond Murphy's highly successful intermediate-level English Grammar in Use, its 107 units concentrate on the areas of grammar normally taught at elementary level.

- ★ Easy-to-use layout: grammar explanations on left-hand pages with exercises to check understanding on facing pages.
- ★ Reference grammar and practice exercises combined in a single volume.
- * Thorough coverage of problems faced by elementary learners, explained in simple language with many examples and attractive illustrations.
- Material organised in grammatical categories (e.g. tenses, questions, articles etc.) But can be used in the order appropriate for learners.
- ★ Can be used for self-study or as supplementary class material.
- * Appendices dealing with irregular verbs, short forms, spelling and phrasal verbs.
- Clear contents list and index of grammatical items.
- Key section contains answers to all exercises.

ISBN 978-9943-301-89-4

Издательство «ART FLEX»